

# Table of Contents

---

## Introduction

About This Manual.....	7
Symbols Glossary.....	7
Data Recording.....	9
California Proposition 65.....	10
Perchlorate.....	10
Ford Credit.....	11
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	11
Special Notices.....	11
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	12
Export Unique Options.....	13

## Child Safety

General Information.....	14
Child Seats.....	16
Child Seat Positioning.....	16
Booster Seats.....	17
Installing Child Seats.....	19
Child Safety Locks.....	24

## Safety Belts

Principle of Operation.....	26
Fastening the Safety Belts.....	27
Safety Belt Height Adjustment.....	30
Safety Belt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime.....	30
Safety Belt Minder.....	31
Child Restraint and Safety Belt Maintenance.....	33

## Personal Safety System™

Personal Safety System™.....	34
------------------------------	----

## Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation.....	35
Driver and Passenger Airbags.....	36
Knee Airbag.....	37

Front Passenger Sensing System.....	37
Side Airbags.....	40
Safety Canopy®.....	41
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....	42
Airbag Disposal.....	43

## Keys and Remote Controls

Principle of Operation.....	44
General Information on Radio Frequencies.....	44
Remote Control.....	44
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	48

## MyKey®

Principle of Operation.....	49
Creating a MyKey.....	49
Clearing All MyKeys.....	50
Checking MyKey System Status.....	50
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....	50
MyKey Troubleshooting.....	51

## Locks

Locking and Unlocking.....	54
Manual Liftgate.....	57
Power Liftgate.....	57
Keyless Entry.....	60

## Security

Passive Anti-Theft System.....	62
Anti-Theft Alarm.....	63

## Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	64
Audio Control.....	64
Voice Control.....	66
Cruise Control.....	66
Information Display Control.....	66

# Table of Contents

---

## Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers.....	67
Autowipers.....	67
Windshield Washers.....	68
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	69

## Lighting

Lighting Control.....	70
Autolamps.....	70
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	71
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	71
Daytime Running Lamps.....	71
Front Fog Lamps.....	72
Direction Indicators.....	72
Interior Lamps.....	72
Ambient Lighting.....	73

## Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows.....	74
Exterior Mirrors.....	75
Interior Mirror.....	76
Sun Visors.....	77
Moonroof.....	77

## Instrument Cluster

Gauges.....	79
Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	80
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	83

## Information Displays

General Information.....	84
Trip Computer.....	86
Information Messages.....	87

## Audio System

General Information.....	97
Audio unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD.....	98
Audio unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/SYNC.....	100

Audio unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/Satellite Radio/SYNC.....	102
Audio unit - Vehicles With: Premium AM/FM/CD.....	105
Audio unit - Vehicles With: Sony AM/FM/CD.....	106
Auxiliary Input Jack.....	109
USB Port.....	110
Media Hub.....	110
Satellite Radio.....	110

## Climate Control

Manual Climate Control.....	113
Automatic Climate Control.....	114
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate.....	115
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	119
Cabin Air Filter.....	119
Remote Start.....	119

## Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position.....	121
Head Restraints.....	121
Manual Seats.....	123
Power Seats.....	124
Memory Function.....	125
Rear Seats.....	126
Heated Seats.....	127
Rear Seat Armrest.....	127

## Universal Garage Door Opener

Universal Garage Door Opener.....	128
-----------------------------------	-----

## Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points.....	132
-----------------------------	-----

## Storage Compartments

Center Console.....	134
Overhead Console.....	134

# Table of Contents

---

## Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information.....	135
Ignition Switch.....	135
Keyless Starting.....	135
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	137
Engine Block Heater.....	138

## Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions.....	140
Fuel Quality.....	141
Running Out of Fuel.....	141
Refueling.....	142
Emission Control System.....	143
Fuel Consumption.....	145

## Transmission

Automatic Transmission.....	147
Hill Start Assist.....	149

## Four-Wheel Drive

Using Four-Wheel Drive.....	151
-----------------------------	-----

## Brakes

General Information.....	156
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	156
Parking Brake.....	157

## Traction Control

Principle of Operation.....	158
Using Traction Control.....	158

## Stability Control

Principle of Operation.....	159
Using Stability Control.....	160

## Parking Aids

Parking Aid.....	161
------------------	-----

Active Park Assist.....	163
Rear View Camera.....	167

## Cruise Control

Principle of Operation.....	170
Using Cruise Control.....	170

## Driving Aids

Blind Spot Monitor.....	171
Eco Mode.....	175
Steering.....	176

## Load Carrying

Rear Under Floor Storage.....	177
Luggage Covers.....	177
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	178
Load Limit.....	179

## Towing

Towing a Trailer.....	188
Trailer Sway Control.....	188
Recommended Towing Weights.....	188
Essential Towing Checks.....	190
Towing Points.....	191
Transporting the Vehicle.....	192
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....	192

## Driving Hints

Breaking-In.....	194
Economical Driving.....	194
Driving Through Water.....	194
Floor Mats.....	195

## Roadside Emergencies

Roadside Assistance.....	197
Hazard Warning Flashers.....	198
Fuel Cut-Off Switch.....	198
Jump-Starting the Vehicle.....	198

# Table of Contents

---

## Customer Assistance

Getting the Services You Need.....	201
In California (U.S. Only).....	202
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only).....	203
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only).....	203
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada.....	204
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature.....	205
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only).....	205
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only).....	206

## Fuses

Changing a Fuse.....	207
Fuse Specification Chart.....	208

## Maintenance

General Information.....	217
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	217
Under Hood Overview - 1.6L EcoBoost®.....	218
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost®.....	219
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L.....	220
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L EcoBoost®.....	221
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.5L/2.0L EcoBoost®.....	221
Engine Oil Check.....	221
Engine Coolant Check.....	222
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check.....	225
Brake Fluid Check.....	225
Power Steering Fluid Check.....	225
Fuel Filter.....	225
Washer Fluid Check.....	225
Changing the Vehicle Battery.....	226
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	227

Changing the Wiper Blades.....	227
Changing the Engine Air Filter.....	228
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	229
Removing a Headlamp.....	231
Changing a Bulb.....	231
Bulb Specification Chart.....	235

## Vehicle Care

General Information.....	236
Cleaning Products.....	236
Cleaning the Exterior.....	236
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	237
Waxing.....	237
Cleaning the Engine.....	237
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades.....	238
Cleaning the Interior.....	238
Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens.....	239
Cleaning Leather Seats.....	239
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.....	240
Vehicle Storage.....	240

## Wheels and Tires

General Information.....	243
Tire Care.....	245
Using Snow Chains.....	256
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	257
Changing a Road Wheel.....	260
Technical Specifications.....	265

## Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications.....	267
Motorcraft Parts.....	267
Vehicle Identification Number.....	269
Vehicle Certification Label.....	270
Transmission Code Designation.....	270
Technical Specifications.....	271



# Table of Contents

---

## **Accessories**

Accessories.....	274
------------------	-----

## **Ford Extended Service Plan (ESP)**

Ford Extended Service Plan (ESP).....	276
---------------------------------------	-----

## **SYNC®**

General Information.....	279
Using Voice Recognition.....	281
Using SYNC® With Your Phone.....	283
SYNC® Applications and Services.....	295
Using SYNC® With Your Media Player.....	301
SYNC® Troubleshooting.....	308

## **MyFord Touch®**

General Information.....	315
Menu.....	326
Entertainment.....	332
Phone.....	352
Information.....	358
Climate.....	367
Navigation.....	371

## **Appendices**

End User License Agreement.....	380
---------------------------------	-----

## **Scheduled Maintenance**

Scheduled Maintenance.....	396
----------------------------	-----

The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2012

All rights reserved.

Part Number: 20120308005357



# Introduction

## ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about it, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

### WARNING



Always drive with due care and attention when using and operating the controls and features on your vehicle.

**Note:** This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to your vehicle.

**Note:** Some of the illustrations in this manual may be used for different models, so may appear different to your vehicle. However, the essential information in the illustrations is always correct.

**Note:** Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

**Note:** Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.

## Protecting the Environment

You must play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

## SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Safety alert



See Owner's Manual



Anti-lock braking system



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks



Battery



Battery acid



Brake fluid - non petroleum based



Brake system



Cabin air filter



Check fuel cap



Child safety door lock or unlock



Child seat lower anchor



Child seat tether anchor



Cruise control

# Introduction

---



Do not open when hot



Engine air filter



Engine coolant



Engine coolant temperature



Engine oil



Explosive gas



Fan warning



Fasten safety belt



Front airbag



Front fog lamps



Fuel pump reset



Fuse compartment



Hazard warning flashers



Heated rear window



Heated windshield



Interior luggage compartment release



Jack



Lighting control



Low tire pressure warning



Maintain correct fluid level



Panic alarm



Parking aid



Parking brake



Power steering fluid



Power windows front/rear



Power window lockout



Service engine soon



Side airbag



Stability control

# Introduction

---



Windshield wash and wipe

## DATA RECORDING

### Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use the SYNC Vehicle Health Report, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used for any purpose. See **SYNC®** (page 279).

### Event Data Recording

**This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.**

**The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:**

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal; and**
- **How fast the vehicle was travelling; and**
- **Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.**

**This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.**

**Note: Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded (see limitations regarding 911 Assist and Traffic, directions and Information privacy below). However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.**

# Introduction

---

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

**Note:** *Including to the extent that any law pertaining to Event Data Recorders applies to SYNC or its features, please note the following: Once 911 Assist (if equipped) is enabled (set ON), 911 Assist may, through any paired and connected cell phone, disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or, in certain vehicles, the activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of being used to electronically or verbally provide to 911 operators the vehicle location (such as latitude and longitude), and/or other details about the vehicle or crash or personal information about the occupants to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the 911 Assist feature. See SYNC® (page 279).*

Additionally, when you connect to Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped, U.S. only), the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction, and speed ("vehicle travel information"), only to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches that you request. If you do not want Ford or its vendors to receive this information, do not activate the service. Ford Motor Company and the vendors it uses to provide you with this information do not store your vehicle travel information. For more information, see Traffic, Directions and Information, Terms and Conditions. See SYNC® (page 279).

## CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65

### WARNING



Some constituents of engine exhaust, certain vehicle components, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

## PERCHLORATE

Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, safety belt pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal. See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate) for more information.

# Introduction

---

## FORD CREDIT

### (U.S. Only)

Ford Credit offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. If you have financed or leased your vehicle through Ford Credit, thank you for your business.

For your convenience we offer a number of ways to contact us, as well as help manage your account.

Phone: 1-800-727-7000

For more information regarding Ford Credit, as well as access Account Manager, please go to [www.fordcredit.com](http://www.fordcredit.com).

## REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

Your vehicle has been built to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

### Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

## Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision but, accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

## Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. Damage caused to your vehicle as a result of the failure of non-Ford parts may not be covered by the Ford Warranty. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

## SPECIAL NOTICES

### New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, refer to the Warranty Manual that is provided to you along with your Owner's Manual.

## Special Instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.

### WARNINGS



Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury. See

**Supplementary Restraints System**  
(page 35).

# Introduction

---

## WARNINGS



Front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats should **NEVER** be placed in front of an active passenger airbag.

## Notice to Owners of Pickup Trucks and Utility Type Vehicles

### WARNING



Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

Before you drive your vehicle, please read this Owner's Guide carefully. Your vehicle is not a passenger car. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

## Using Your Vehicle With a Snowplow

### Do not use this vehicle for snowplowing.

Your vehicle is not equipped with a snowplowing package.

## Using Your Vehicle as an Ambulance

### Do not use this vehicle as an ambulance.

Your vehicle is not equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package.

## MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and that you comply with all applicable laws.



# Introduction

---

## EXPORT UNIQUE OPTIONS

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Manual. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's Manual is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for Export. **Refer to this Owner's Manual for all other required information and warnings.**

# Child Safety

---

## GENERAL INFORMATION

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children.

### WARNINGS



Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be purchased separately from the vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



All children are shaped differently. The recommendations for safety restraints are based on probable child height, age and weight thresholds from National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) and other safety organizations, or are the minimum

### WARNINGS

requirements of law. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and consult your pediatrician to make sure your child seat is appropriate for your child, and is compatible with and properly installed in the vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST, contact the NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or on the internet at <http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov>. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST or for further information, contact your provincial ministry of transportation, your local St. John Ambulance office at <http://www.sfa.ca>, or Transport Canada at 1-800-333-0371 (<http://www.tc.gc.ca>). Failure to properly restrain children in safety seats made especially for their height, age, and weight may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

---

## Child Safety

---

### Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children

Child	Child size, height, weight, or age	Recommended restraint type
Infants or toddlers	Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).	Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Small children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Larger children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).	Use a vehicle safety belt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seatback upright.

# Child Safety

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the U.S. and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 pounds (36 kilograms). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children twelve (12) years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position.

## CHILD SEATS





E142594


Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat) for infants, toddlers or children weighing 40 pounds (18 kilograms) or less (generally age four or younger)


## CHILD SEAT POSITIONING


### WARNINGS

 Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. **NEVER** place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat all the way back. When possible, all children age 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

 Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by the vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

 Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision, which may result in serious injury or death.

 Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a collision.

 Always restrain an unoccupied child seat or booster seat. These objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.

# Child Safety

## WARNINGS



Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of

## WARNINGS



injury or death in a collision. Do not leave children, unreliable adults, or pets unattended in your vehicle.

Restraint Type	Child Weight	Use any attachment method as indicated below by X				
		LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	LATCH (lower anchors only)	Safety belt and top tether anchor	Safety belt and LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	Safety belt only
Rear facing child seat	Up to 48 lb (21 kg)		X			X
Forward facing child seat	Up to 48 lb (21 kg)	X		X	X	
Forward facing child seat	Over 48 lb (21 kg)			X	X	

**Note:** The child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See the Seats chapter for information on head restraints.

## BOOSTER SEATS

### WARNING

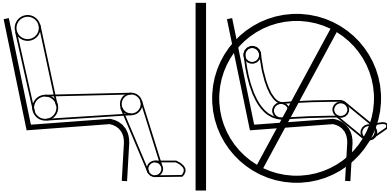


Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 pounds (18 kilograms) and 80 pounds (36 kilograms) and upward to 100 pounds (45 kilograms) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 pounds (36 kilograms).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:

# Child Safety



E142595

- Can the child sit all the way back against the vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?
- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with the vehicle lap and shoulder belt.

## Types of Booster Seats



E68924

- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat back or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back or head restraint and lap and shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.



E70710

- High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The following drawings compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.

## Child Safety



E142596



E142597



If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

### INSTALLING CHILD SEATS

#### Using LAP AND SHOULDER BELTS

##### WARNINGS



Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.

##### WARNINGS



Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible.



Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

## Child Safety

When installing a child safety seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

- Use the correct safety belt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place the vehicle seat back in the upright position.
- Put the safety belt in the automatic locking mode. Refer to Step 5. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

Perform the following steps when installing the child seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

**Note:** Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.



E142528

1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.



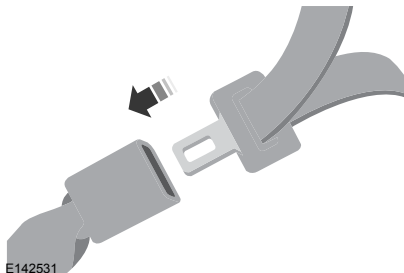
E142529

2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.



E142530

3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.



E142531



## Child Safety

4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



E142875

5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.

**Note:** The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.
7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.



E142533

8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, e.g., by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the additional weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to the vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean towards the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.
9. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped).



E142534

## Child Safety

10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) of movement for proper installation.

Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a Certified Passenger Seat Technician.

### Using Lower Anchors AND Tethers FOR Children (LATCH)

#### WARNINGS



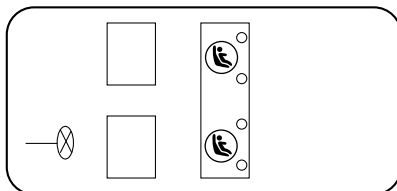
Never attach two child safety seats to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.



Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

The LATCH system is composed of three vehicle anchor points: two (2) lower anchors located where the vehicle seat back and seat cushion meet (called the seat bight) and one (1) top tether anchor located behind that seating position.

LATCH compatible child safety seats have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use safety belts to attach the child seat, however the safety belt can still be used to attach the child seat. For forward-facing child seats, the top tether strap must also be attached to the proper top tether anchor, if a top tether strap has been provided with your child seat.



E142535

Your vehicle has LATCH lower anchors for child seat installation at the seating positions marked with the child seat symbol.



E144054

# Child Safety

---

The LATCH anchors are located at the rear section of the rear seat between the cushion and seatback below the symbols as shown. Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to properly install a child seat with LATCH attachments. Follow the instructions on attaching child safety seats with tether straps.

Attach LATCH lower attachments of the child seat only to the anchors shown.

## Use of Inboard Lower Anchors from the Outboard Seating Positions (Center Seating Use)

### WARNING



The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 inches (28 centimeters) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

The lower anchors at the center of the second row rear seat are spaced 18 inches (46 centimeters) apart. A child seat with rigid LATCH attachments cannot be installed at the center seating position. LATCH compatible child seats (with attachments on belt webbing) can only be used at this seating position provided that the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child seat to any lower anchor if an adjacent child seat is attached to that anchor.

Each time you use the safety seat, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child seat from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to the vehicle. The seat should move less than one inch when you do this for a proper installation.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

## Combining Safety Belt and LATCH Lower Anchors for Attaching Child Safety Seats

When used in combination, either the safety belt or the LATCH lower anchors may be attached first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if included with the child seat.

## Using Tether Straps



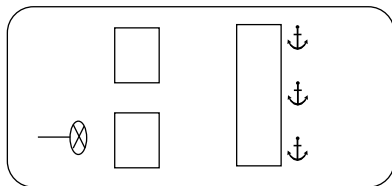
Many forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety seat and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats.

Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety seat does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in the vehicle.

Once the child safety seat has been installed using either the safety belt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.

The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):

# Child Safety

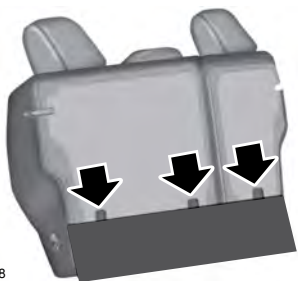


E142537

Perform the following steps to install a child safety seat with tether anchors:

**Note:** If you install a child seat with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child seat off the vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child seat. Keeping the child seat just touching the vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.

1. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat. For outboard seating positions, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts. For the center seating positions, route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint. If needed, the head restraints can also be removed.



E142538

2. Locate the correct anchor on the back panel of the rear seat for the selected seating position. The anchors are labeled with the tether strap symbol and are partially covered by the gap panel. Pull the panel back to fully expose the anchors.



E142539

3. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.
4. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions. If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, Ford also recommends its use.

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.

## Child Safety

---



E112197









The childproof locks are located on the rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door.

- Driver side: turn counterclockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.
- Passenger side: turn clockwise to lock and counterclockwise to unlock.



# Safety Belts

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS

-  Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.
-  To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit where they can be properly restrained.
-  Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision.
-  All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.
-  It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.
-  In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a safety belt.
-  Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.
-  When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

### WARNINGS

-  Safety belts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.
-  Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear safety belts for optimum protection in an accident.

All seating positions in this vehicle have lap and shoulder safety belts. All occupants of the vehicle should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The safety belt system consists of:

- Lap and shoulder safety belts.
- Shoulder safety belt with automatic locking mode, (except driver safety belt).
- Height adjuster at the front outboard seating positions.
- Retractor and anchor pretensioner at the front outboard seating positions.
- Belt tension sensor at the front outboard passenger seating position.



- Safety belt warning light and chime.



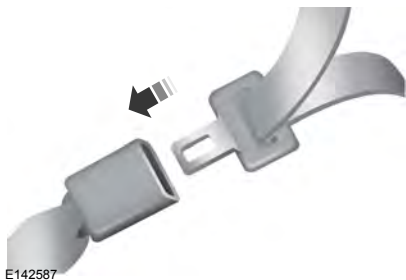
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

# Safety Belts

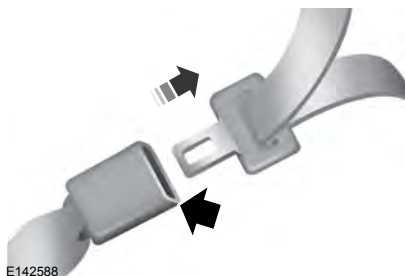
The safety belt pretensioners are designed to activate in frontal, near-frontal and side collisions, and in rollovers. The safety belt pretensioners on the retractor and anchor at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the safety belts firmly against the occupant's body when activated. This helps increase the effectiveness of the safety belts. In frontal collisions, the safety belt pretensioners can be activated alone or, if the collision is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags.

## FASTENING THE SAFETY BELTS

The front outboard and rear safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts.



1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.




2. To unfasten, press the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.



When in use, the rear safety belts should be placed in the belt guides on the outboard seatbacks.

## Restraint of Pregnant Women

### WARNING

 Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and the safety belt properly fastened. The lap portion of the safety belt should fit snug and be positioned low across the hips. The shoulder portion of the safety belt should be positioned across the chest. Pregnant women should also follow this practice. See the following figure.

# Safety Belts



Pregnant women should always wear their safety belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

## Safety Belt Locking Modes

### WARNINGS



After any vehicle collision, the safety belt system at all passenger seating positions must be checked by an authorized dealer to verify that the automatic locking retractor feature for child seats is still functioning properly. In addition, all safety belts should be checked for proper function.



**BELT AND RETRACTOR ASSEMBLY MUST BE REPLACED** if the safety belt assembly automatic locking retractor feature or any other safety belt function is not operating properly when checked by an authorized dealer. Failure to replace the belt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in collisions.

All safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. The driver safety belt has the first type of locking mode, and the front outboard passenger and rear seat safety belts have both types of locking modes described as follows:

### Vehicle Sensitive Mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination safety belts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

In addition, the retractor is designed to lock if the webbing is pulled out too quickly. If this occurs, let the belt retract slightly and pull webbing out again in a slow and controlled manner.

### Automatic Locking Mode

In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver safety belt.

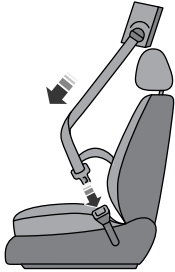
### When to Use the Automatic Locking Mode

This mode should be used any time a child safety seat, except a booster, is installed in passenger front or rear seating positions. Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. See **Child Safety** (page 14).



# Safety Belts

## How to Use the Automatic Locking Mode



E142591

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is pulled out.

Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.

## How to Disengage the Automatic Locking Mode

Disconnect the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

## How to Extract Safety Belts in the Rear Outboard Positions

Safety belts in the rear outboard positions can lock if the seat back is returned firmly to its upright position. The safety belts can be unlocked using the following procedures.

For vehicles where the rear seats recline:

1. Recline the seat to its full rear recline position. See **Safety Belts** (page 26).
2. The safety belt should then unlock.

3. Return the seat back to its desired upright position.

For vehicles with rear seats that do not recline or are locked with the seat in its full rear recline position:

1. Grasp the safety belt webbing at the top of the seat back.
2. Pull the safety belt webbing forward, firmly.
3. After pulling the safety belt forward, allow the safety belt to feed back into the safety belt retractor as much as possible. If necessary, press the seat back down to allow the safety belt webbing to retract further.
4. The safety belt should then unlock.
5. If the safety belt does not unlock, repeat steps 1-3.

## Safety Belt Extension Assembly

### WARNING



Position the safety belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt and increase the risk of injury in a collision.

If the safety belt is too short when fully extended, a safety belt extension assembly can be obtained from an authorized dealer.

Use only extensions manufactured by the same supplier as the safety belt. Manufacturer identification is located at the end of the webbing on the label. Also, use the safety belt extension only if the safety belt is too short for you when fully extended.

# Safety Belts

## SAFETY BELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

### WARNING



Position the safety belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt and increase the risk of injury in a collision.



E87511

Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.

To adjust the shoulder belt height, squeeze the button and slide the height adjuster up or down. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

## SAFETY BELT WARNING LAMP AND INDICATOR CHIME



This lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound if the driver's safety belt has not been fastened when the vehicle's ignition is turned on.

## Conditions of operation

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light illuminates 1-2 minutes and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding...	The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off.

# Safety Belts

## SAFETY BELT MINDER

### Belt-Minder®

This feature supplements the safety belt warning function by providing additional reminders by intermittently sounding a chime and illuminating the safety belt warning light when the driver's or front passenger's seat is occupied and the safety belt is unbuckled.

The system uses information from the front passenger sensing system to determine if a front seat passenger is present and therefore potentially in need of a warning. To avoid activating the Belt-Minder feature for objects placed in the front passenger seat, warnings will only be given to large front seat occupants as determined by the front passenger sensing system.

If the Belt-Minder warnings have expired (warnings for approximately five minutes) for one occupant (driver or front passenger), the other occupant can still activate the Belt-Minder feature.

If...	Then...
The driver's and front passenger's safety belts are buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position or less than 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on...	The Belt-Minder feature will not activate.
The driver's or front passenger's safety belt is not buckled when the vehicle has reached at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on...	The Belt-Minder feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for approximately five minutes or until the safety belts are buckled.
The driver's or front passenger's safety belt becomes unbuckled for approximately one minute while the vehicle is traveling at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and more than 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on...	The Belt-Minder feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for approximately five minutes or until the safety belts are buckled.

# Safety Belts

---

## Deactivating and Activating the Belt-Minder Feature

### WARNING



While the system allows you to deactivate it, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle. To reduce the risk of injury, do not deactivate or activate the system while driving the vehicle.

**Note:** *The driver and front passenger warning are deactivated and activated independently. When deactivating or activating one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this will terminate the process.*

Read Steps 1 - 4 thoroughly before proceeding with the deactivation or activation programming procedure.

The system can be deactivated or activated by performing the following procedure:

Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- The parking brake is set
- The gearshift is in position **P**
- The ignition is off
- The driver and front passenger safety belts are unbuckled.

1. Turn the ignition on. **DO NOT START THE ENGINE.**
2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off (approximately one minute). After Step 2, wait an additional five seconds before proceeding with Step 3. Once Step 3 is started, the procedure must be completed within 60 seconds.

3. For the seating position being disabled, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt four times at a moderate speed, ending in the unbuckled state. After Step 3, the safety belt warning light will turn on.
4. While the safety belt warning light is on, buckle and then unbuckle the safety belt. After Step 4, the safety belt warning light will flash three times for confirmation.
  - This will disable the feature for that seating position if it is currently enabled.
  - This will enable the feature for that seating position if it is currently disabled.

## Safety Belts

---

### CHILD RESTRAINT AND SAFETY BELT MAINTENANCE

Inspect the vehicle safety belts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child seat safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seatback (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a collision. Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint. Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a collision be replaced. However, if the collision was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a collision should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Properly care for safety belts. See **Vehicle Care** (page 236).

## Personal Safety System™

---

The Personal Safety System provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyze different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

Your vehicle's Personal Safety System consists of:

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Front outboard safety belts with pretensioners, energy management retractors (first row only), and safety belt usage sensors.
- Driver's seat position sensor.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Passenger airbag off and on indicator lamp.
- Front crash severity sensors.
- Restraints Control Module with impact and safing sensors.
- Restraint system warning light and backup tone.
- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensor(s), safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt usage sensors, driver seat position sensor, front passenger sensing system, and indicator lights.

### **How Does the Personal Safety System Work?**


The Personal Safety System can adapt the deployment strategy of your vehicle's safety devices according to crash severity and occupant conditions. A collection of crash and occupant sensors provides information to the Restraints Control Module. During a crash, the Restraints Control Module may activate the safety belt pretensioners and may activate either one or both stages of the dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints based on crash severity and occupant conditions.


# Supplementary Restraints System


---


## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION


### WARNINGS


 Airbags DO NOT inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.


 All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.


 Always transport children 12 years old and under in the back seat and always properly use appropriate child restraints.


 Never place your arm over the airbag module as a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.

 Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.

 Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

 Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.

 If the airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again and must be replaced immediately. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

 All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the safety belts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags DO NOT inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

**Note:** *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (e.g., baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic. While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

## Supplementary Restraints System

### SOS POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system flashes the turn signal lamps and sounds the horn (intermittently) in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the safety belt pretensioners.

The horn and lamps will turn off when:

- the hazard control button is pressed
- the panic button is pressed on the remote entry transmitter, or
- the vehicle runs out of power.

### DRIVER AND PASSENGER AIRBAGS

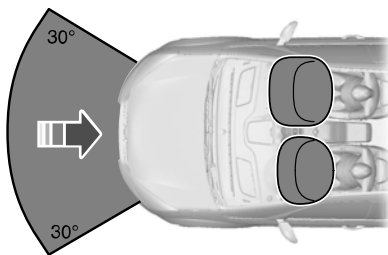
#### WARNINGS



Never place your arm or any objects over an airbag module. Placing your arm over a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries. Objects placed on or over the airbag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the airbag into your face and torso causing serious injury.



Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.



E74302

The driver and front passenger airbags will deploy during significant frontal and near frontal collisions.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules.
- Front passenger sensing system.



- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 42).

### Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment

#### WARNING



National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 in. (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.



## Supplementary Restraints System


To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly (one or two degrees) from the upright position.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it's very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

### Children and Airbags

#### WARNING

 Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.



E142846

Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a collision.

### KNEE AIRBAG




The driver's side knee airbag is located under the instrument panel. The system works along with the driver's front airbag to help reduce injury to the legs. When the driver's airbag activates in a collision, the knee airbag deploys from under the instrument panel. As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



Make sure the knee airbag is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 42).

### FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

#### WARNINGS

-  Even with Advanced Restraints Systems, children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.
-  Sitting improperly out of position or with the seat back reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the front passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash
-  Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

## Supplementary Restraints System

### WARNINGS



Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system.

This system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger's seat and safety belt to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the front passenger's frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.



E145987

The front passenger sensing system uses a passenger airbag off indicator which will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled. The indicator lamp is located in the center stack of the instrument panel.

**Note:** *The passenger airbag off light will illuminate for a short period of time when the ignition is first turned on to confirm it is functional.*

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag when the front passenger seat is unoccupied, or a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.
- If the child restraint has been installed and the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates, then turn the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the passenger airbag status indicator will not illuminate.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger's seat, but the passenger airbag status indicator lamp is lit, it is possible that the person isn't sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seat back in the full upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger's frontal airbag.
- If the passenger airbag status indicator lamp remains lit even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

## Supplementary Restraints System

Occupant	Passenger Airbag Status Indicator	Passenger Airbag
Empty	Unlit	Disabled
Child	Lit	Disabled
Adult	Unlit	Enabled

**Note:** When the passenger airbag status indicator lamp is illuminated, the passenger side airbag (seat mounted) may be disabled to avoid the risk of airbag deployment injuries.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it's very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

If you think that the status of the passenger airbag off indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console (if equipped)
- Objects hanging off the seat back
- Objects stowed in the seat back map pocket (if equipped)
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap
- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat

The conditions listed above may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described in the list above.



To know if the front passenger sensing system is operating properly, See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 42).

### If the airbag readiness lamp is lit, do the following:

The driver or adult passengers should check for any objects that may be lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.

If objects are lodged or cargo is interfering with the seat; please take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

- Pull the vehicle over.
- Turn the vehicle off.
- Driver or adult passengers should check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction(s) (if found).
- Restart the vehicle.

## Supplementary Restraints System


- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness lamp is no longer illuminated.
- If the airbag readiness lamp remains illuminated, this may or may not be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.


DO NOT attempt to repair or service the system; take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.


If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact your authorized dealer.


### SIDE AIRBAGS

#### WARNINGS

 Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the seatbacks (of the front seats), or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.

 Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

 Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

 Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag, its fuses or the seat cover on a seat containing an airbag. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

#### WARNINGS



If the side airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

The side airbags are fitted on the outboard side of the seatbacks of the front seats. In certain lateral collisions, the airbag on the side affected by the collision will be inflated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact collisions.



E142848

The system consists of the following:

- A label or embossed side panel indicating that side airbags are fitted to your vehicle.
- Side airbags located inside the seatback of the driver and front passenger seatbacks.
- Front passenger sensing system



Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 42).

## Supplementary Restraints System

**Note:** The passenger sensing system will deactivate the passenger seat-mounted side airbag if it detects an empty, unbuckled passenger seat.

The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.

### SAFETY CANOPY®

#### WARNINGS

⚠ Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.

⚠ Do not lean your head on the door. The curtain airbag could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.

⚠ Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the curtain airbags, its fuses, the A, B, or C pillar trim, or the headliner on a vehicle containing curtain airbags. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

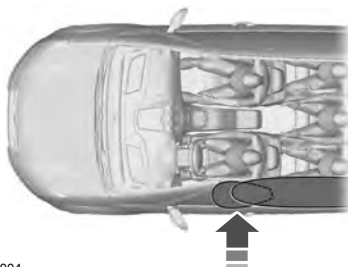
⚠ All occupants of the vehicle including the driver should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag supplemental restraint system and curtain airbag is provided.

⚠ To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the curtain airbag.

#### WARNINGS

⚠ If the curtain airbags have deployed, the curtain airbags will not function again. The curtain airbags (including the A, B and C pillar trim and headliner) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer. If the curtain airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

The Safety Canopy will deploy during significant side collisions or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy is mounted to the roof side-rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above each row of seats. In certain lateral collisions or rollover events, the Safety Canopy will be activated, regardless of which seats are occupied. The Safety Canopy is designed to inflate between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact collisions and rollover events.



E75004

The system consists of the following:

- Safety canopy curtain airbags fitted above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows identified by a label or wording on the headliner or roof-pillar trim.
- A flexible headliner which opens above the side doors to allow air curtain deployment

## Supplementary Restraints System



- The crash sensors and monitoring system have a readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 42).

Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in the second or third row seats. The Safety Canopy will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

The design and development of the Safety Canopy included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags (including the Safety Canopy).

### CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR

#### WARNING



Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of the vehicle (including frame, bumper, front end body structure and tow hooks) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of the vehicle.

The vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors which provide information to the Restraints Control Module which deploys (activates) the front safety belt pretensioners, driver airbag, passenger airbag, seat mounted side airbags, and the Safety Canopy. Based on the type of accident (frontal impact, side impact or rollover) the restraints control module will deploy the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash and occupant sensors. The readiness of the safety system is indicated by a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or by a backup tone if the warning light is not working. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:



- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after the ignition is turned on.
- The readiness light will either flash or stay lit.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

## Supplementary Restraints System

---

The safety belt pretensioners and the airbag supplemental restraint system is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains longitudinal or lateral deceleration sufficient to cause the restraints control module to deploy a safety device or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor.

The fact that the safety belt pretensioners or airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage, etc.) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- Front airbags are designed to activate only in frontal and near-frontal collisions (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts) unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration.
- The safety belt pretensioners and rear inflatable safety belts are designed to activate in frontal, near-frontal and side collisions, and in rollovers.
- Side airbags are designed to inflate in side-impact collisions, not rollovers, rear impacts, frontal or near-frontal collisions, unless the collision causes sufficient lateral deceleration.
- The Safety Canopy is designed to inflate in certain side impact collisions or rollover events, not in rear impact, frontal or near-frontal collisions, unless the collision causes sufficient lateral deceleration or rollover likelihood.

### AIRBAG DISPOSAL

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags MUST BE disposed of by qualified personnel.

# Keys and Remote Controls

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The remote control allows you to:

- remotely lock or unlock the vehicle doors
- unlock the doors without actively using a key or remote control (intelligent access only)
- remotely open the power liftgate (if equipped)
- remotely start or stop the engine (if equipped)
- arm and disarm the anti-theft system
- activate the panic alarm.

## GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

The remote control complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**Note:** *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). Vehicles with the remote start feature will have a greater range. A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

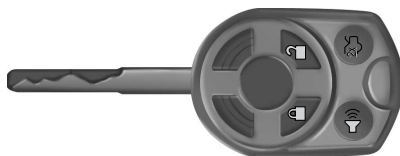
- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around the vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

## Intelligent Access (If Equipped)

The system uses a radio frequency signal to communicate with your vehicle and authorize your vehicle to unlock when commanded (either by touching the inside of the front exterior door handle, by activating the exterior luggage compartment button, or a button on the transmitter itself). If excessive radio frequency interface is present in the area, or if the transmitter battery is low, it may be necessary to mechanically unlock your door. The mechanical key blade in your intelligent access key can be used to open the driver's door in this situation. See **Remote Control** (page 44).

## REMOTE CONTROL

### Integrated Keyhead Transmitters (If Equipped)



E142585

Your vehicle may be equipped with two integrated keyhead transmitters. The key blade is used to start the vehicle and unlock or lock the driver's door from outside the vehicle. The transmitter portion functions as the remote control.



## Keys and Remote Controls



E138615

**Note:** Your vehicle's keys were issued with a security label that provides important vehicle key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.

### Intelligent Access Key (If Equipped)

**Note:** A three-button remote control will operate similarly.



E138616

Your vehicle may be equipped with two intelligent access keys which operate the power locks and the remote start system. The key must be in the vehicle to activate the push button start system.



E142431

The intelligent access key also contains a removable mechanical key blade that can be used to unlock the driver door. Slide the release on the back of the transmitter to release the key blade, then pull the blade out.



E138618

**Note:** Your vehicle's back-up keys were issued with a security tag that provides important vehicle key cut information. Keep the tag in a safe place for future reference.

### Replacing the Battery

**Note:** Refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

**Note:** Replacing the battery will not delete the transmitter from the vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

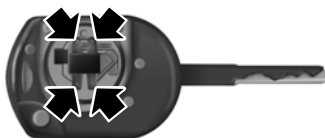
# Keys and Remote Controls

## Integrated Keyhead Transmitter



E138619

1. Twist a thin coin in the slot of the transmitter near the key ring to remove the battery cover.
2. Remove the old battery.



E138620

3. Insert the new battery. Refer to the instructions inside the transmitter for the correct orientation of the battery. Press the battery down to make sure it is fully in the housing.
4. Snap the battery cover back onto the transmitter.

## Intelligent Access Transmitter

1. Remove the backup key from the transmitter.



E142432

2. Twist a thin coin in the slot hidden behind the backup key slot to remove the battery cover.



E138622

3. Remove the old battery.
4. Insert the new battery. Refer to the instruction inside the transmitter for the correct orientation of the battery. Press the battery down to make sure it is fully in the housing.
5. Snap the battery cover back onto the transmitter and install the backup key.

## Car Finder



Press the button twice within three seconds. The horn will chirp and the turn signals will flash. It is recommended that this method be used to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

## Keys and Remote Controls

**Note:** If locking was not successful or any door or the liftgate is not closed, or if the hood is not closed on vehicles equipped with a perimeter alarm or remote start, the horn will chirp twice and the lamps will not flash.

### Sounding a Panic Alarm

**Note:** The panic alarm will only operate when the ignition is off.



Press the button to activate the alarm. Press the button again or turn the ignition on to deactivate.

### Remote Start (If Equipped)

#### WARNING



To avoid exhaust fumes, do not use remote start if your vehicle is parked indoors or areas that are not well ventilated.

**Note:** Do not use remote start if your vehicle is low on fuel.



Your vehicle has remote start if the transmitter has this button.

The remote start feature allows you to start the engine from outside the vehicle. The transmitter has an extended operating range.

Vehicles with automatic climate control can be configured to operate when the vehicle is remote started. See **Automatic Climate Control** (page 114).

Many states and provinces have restrictions for the use of remote start. Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding remote start systems.

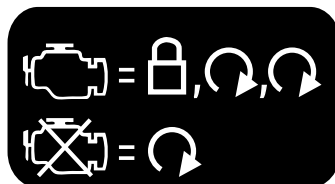
The remote start system will not work if:

- the ignition is on
- the alarm system is triggered

- the feature has been disabled
- the hood is not closed
- two remote vehicle starts have already been attempted within the last hour
- the vehicle is not in P (Park)
- the vehicle battery voltage is too low
- the service engine soon indicator was on the last time the vehicle was driven.

### Remote Starting the Engine

**Note:** Each button press must be done within three seconds of each other. The vehicle will not remote start if this sequence is not followed and the horn will not chirp.



E138626

The label on your transmitter details the starting procedure. To remote start the engine:

1. Press the lock button to lock all the doors.
2. Press the remote start button twice. The exterior lamps will flash twice.

The horn will chirp if the system fails to start, unless quiet start is on. Quiet start will run the blower fan at a slower speed to reduce noise. It can be switched on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 84).

## Keys and Remote Controls

---

**Note:** *If the vehicle has been remote started and is equipped with an integrated keyhead transmitter, you must turn the ignition on before driving the vehicle. If equipped with an intelligent access transmitter, you must press the START/STOP button on the instrument panel once while applying the brake pedal before driving the vehicle.*

The power windows will be inhibited during the remote start and the radio will not turn on automatically.

The parking lamps will remain on and the engine will run for 5, 10, or 15 minutes, depending on the setting.

### **Extending the Engine Run Time**

Repeat Steps 1 and 2 with the engine still running to extend the run time for another remote start duration. If you programmed the duration to last 10 minutes, the second 10 minutes will be added. For example, if the vehicle had been running from the first remote start for five minutes, the engine will continue to run now for a total of 20 minutes. You can only extend the remote start once.

Wait at least five seconds before remote starting after an engine shutdown. Only two remote starts are allowed.

The vehicle must be started without remote start then switched off or allow one hour to pass before using remote start again if additional remote starts are desired.

### **Turning the Engine Off After Remote Starting**



Press the button once. The parking lamps will turn off.

You may have to be closer to the vehicle than when starting due to ground reflection and the added noise of the running engine.

You can disable or enable the remote start system through the information display. See **General Information** (page 84).

## **REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL**

Replacement or additional keys or remote controls can be purchased from your authorized dealer. Your dealer can program the transmitters to your vehicle or you may be able to program them yourself. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 62).

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys programmed to the vehicle can be activated with these restricted modes. Any keys that have not been programmed are referred to as an "administrator key" or "admin key" which can be used to:

- create a restricted key
- program optional MyKey settings
- clear all MyKey features altogether.

Once a key has been programmed you can access the following information using the information display control:

- How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to the vehicle.
- The total distance the vehicle has been driven with a MyKey.

For vehicles equipped with intelligent access key (push button start), when both a MyKey and an admin intelligent access key (fob) are present, the admin fob will be recognized by the vehicle to start the engine.

## Standard Settings

These settings cannot be changed.

- **Belt-Minder®.** This cannot be disabled and the five-minute timer does not expire. The audio system is muted when MyKey Belt-Minder® is activated.
- **Early low fuel.** Warnings are displayed in the information display control followed by an audible tone when the fuel tank is at one-eighth tank or less.
- **Driver assist features,** if equipped on your vehicle, are forced on: Parking aid, blind spot information system (BLIS®) with cross traffic alert and the collision warning system.

## Optional Settings

These settings can be configured right after a MyKey is first created or changed afterward with an Admin key.

- **Vehicle speed limit of 80 mph (130 km/h).** Visual warnings are displayed followed by an audible tone when vehicle speed has reached 80 mph (130 km/h).
- **Vehicle speed warning of 45, 55 or 65 mph (75, 90, or 105 km/h).** Visual warnings are displayed followed by an audible tone when the preselected vehicle speed is exceeded.
- **Audio system maximum volume of 45%.** A message in the audio system is displayed when attempting to exceed the limited volume.
- **AdvanceTrac®.** The system cannot be turned off when Always-on has been set.

## CREATING A MYKEY

Use the information display control to create a MyKey:

1. Insert the key you want to program into the ignition or, if the vehicle is equipped with push button start, put the intelligent access key in the backup slot. Backup slot information is located in a different chapter. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 135).
2. Turn the ignition on.
3. Access the main menu on the information display controls and select **Settings**, then **MyKey** by pressing OK or the > button.
4. Press OK to select **Create**.
5. When prompted, hold the OK button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted at the next start.

The key is successfully programmed. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

You can program optional settings for the key(s). Refer to **Programming/Changing optional settings**.

Vehicles equipped with remote start need to follow a separate procedure. See **Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems** (page 50).

## Programming/Changing Optional Settings

All programmed keys can be cleared within the same key cycle in which a key was programmed, otherwise an admin key is required to clear the keys. See **Clearing All MyKeys** (page 50).

You can access the optional settings through the information display control.

1. Turn the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Access the main menu and select **Settings**, then **MyKey**.
3. Use the arrow buttons to get to an optional feature.
4. Press OK or > to scroll through settings.
5. Press OK or > to make a selection.

## CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

All programmed MyKeys can be cleared within the same key cycle in which a MyKey was created, otherwise an admin key is required to clear the keys.

To clear all MyKeys (which removes all restrictions and returns them to admin key status), use the information display control to do the following:

1. Access the main menu and select **Settings**, then **MyKey**.
2. Scroll to **Clear All** and press the OK button.

3. Hold the OK button until **ALL MYKEYS CLEARED** is displayed.

## CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

The information display control displays information about keys programmed to the vehicle:

- **MYKEY MILES:** Tracks mileage when a restricted key is used. If mileage does not accumulate as expected, then the key is not being used by the intended user. The only way to reset this to zero is by resetting the keys. If the mileage is lower than the last time you checked, then the key system has been recently reset.
- **#MYKEY(S):** Indicates how many restricted keys are programmed to the vehicle. Can also be used to detect deletion of a restricted key.
- **#ADMIN KEY(S):** Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to the vehicle. Can also be used to detect if an additional key has been programmed to the vehicle.

## USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is NOT compatible with non-Ford-approved aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system please see your Ford authorized dealer for a Ford-approved remote start system.

The following information MAY help customers who choose to use a non-Ford-approved remote start system. The actions provided below do NOT make MyKey compatible with non-Ford-approved remote start system, but it MAY help you to retain some MyKey functions.

## Vehicles Equipped with Traditional Keys

When using a non-Ford-approved remote start system, the default settings may recognize the remote start system as an additional admin key with its associated privileges. This makes it NOT compatible with MyKey. Restart the engine when you insert a key into the ignition cylinder it may help you to retain some MyKey functions.

In addition to the key that has been programmed as a MyKey, owners of vehicles equipped with traditional keys have the option to program the non-Ford-approved remote start system as a MyKey if the remote start fob is used by the MyKey driver.

To program a non-Ford-approved remote start system as a MyKey, do the following:

- Enter the vehicle and close all doors.
- Remote start the vehicle using your non-Ford-approved remote start fob.
- See **Creating a MyKey** (page 49). Follow Steps 1-5.

## Vehicles Equipped with Intelligent Access Key (Push Button Start)

**Note:** *It is not possible to program the remote start system as a MyKey on vehicles equipped with intelligent access key (push button start). Therefore, you should treat the remote start fob as you would any other admin key. When the vehicle is started using remote start, the system will stall the engine when you either enter the vehicle or shift the vehicle into gear. Prior to the engine stall, the vehicle will have administrative privileges. When you restart the engine, the vehicle will identify the user as an admin or MyKey driver depending on the settings of the actual key used to start the vehicle.*

**Note:** *For all vehicles, the number of MYKEY(S) PROGRAMMED or ADMIN KEYS PROGRAMMED that is displayed in the MyKey system status menus, may include the non-Ford-approved remote start system as an additional key in the total count. See **Checking MyKey System Status** (page 50).*

For all vehicles with a non-Ford-approved remote start installed, it is possible to program all "real" keys as MyKeys, in which case, you will need to use your remote start system to clear all MyKeys (which removes all restrictions and returns them to admin key status) by doing the following:

- Enter the vehicle and close all doors.
- Remote start the vehicle using your non-Ford-approved remote start fob.
- See **Clearing All MyKeys** (page 50). Follow Steps 1-3.

## MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING

Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot program a key	The key in the ignition does not have admin privileges.

Condition	Potential Causes
	<p>The key in the ignition is the only admin key (there always has to be at least one admin key).</p> <p>The intelligent access key is not in the backup slot (vehicles with push button start).</p> <p>SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system is disabled or in unlimited mode.</p> <p>The vehicle has been started using a remote start system that is not programmed with admin privileges. See <b>Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems</b> (page 50).</p>
I cannot program the optional settings	<p>The key in the ignition does not have admin privileges.</p> <p>No keys are programmed to the vehicle. See <b>Creating a MyKey</b>.</p> <p>The vehicle has been started using a remote start system that is not programmed with admin privileges. See <b>Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems</b> (page 50).</p>
I cannot clear the restricted keys	<p>Key in the ignition does not have admin privileges.</p> <p>No restricted keys are programmed to the vehicle. See <b>Creating a MyKey</b>.</p> <p>The vehicle has been started using a remote start system that is not programmed with admin privileges. See <b>Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems</b> (page 50).</p>
I lost the only admin key	Purchase a new key from your authorized dealer.
I lost a key	Program a spare key. See <b>Passive Anti-Theft System</b> (page 62).
I accidentally programmed all keys as restricted keys	The vehicle has a remote start system that is recognized as an admin key. Restricted keys can be reset using remote start. See <b>Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems</b> (page 50).
No restricted key functions with intelligent access key (push button start)	An admin key is present at engine start-up. No restricted keys are programmed to the vehicle. See <b>Creating a MyKey</b> .



## MyKey®

---

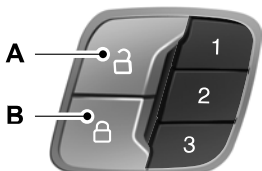
Condition	Potential Causes
Restricted key programmed total includes one additional key	An unknown key has been programmed to the vehicle as a restricted key. The vehicle is equipped with a remote start system. See <b>Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems</b> (page 50).
Admin keys programmed total includes one additional key	An unknown key has been programmed to the vehicle as an admin key. The vehicle is equipped with a remote start system. See <b>Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems</b> (page 50).
MyKey miles do not accumulate	The restricted key is not being used by the intended user. The key system has been reset.

# Locks

## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

You can use the power door lock control or the remote control to lock and unlock the vehicle.

### Power Door Locks



E138628

- A    Unlock
- B    Lock

### Remote Control

The remote control can be used any time the vehicle is not running.

### Unlocking the Doors (Two-Stage Unlock)



Press the button to unlock the driver's door.

Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. The turn signals will flash.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for four seconds to disable or enable two-stage unlocking. Disabling two-stage unlocking allows all vehicle doors to unlock with one press of the button. The turn signals will flash twice to indicate the unlocking mode was changed. The unlocking mode will be applied to the remote control, keyless entry keypad and intelligent access.

Intelligent access at the driver's door will unlock all doors when two-stage unlocking is disabled.

### Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all the doors. The turn signals will illuminate.

Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors will lock again, the horn will chirp and the turn signals will illuminate if all the doors and the luggage compartment are closed.

**Note:** If locking was not successful or any door or the liftgate is not closed, or if the hood is not closed on vehicles equipped with a perimeter alarm or remote start, the horn will chirp twice and the lamps will not flash.

### Power Liftgate (if equipped)

#### WARNINGS



Make sure all persons are clear of the liftgate area before using power liftgate control.



Make sure the liftgate is closed to prevent exhaust fumes from being drawn into the vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents open so outside air comes into the vehicle.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.



Press twice within three seconds to open or close the liftgate, or to reverse the movement. See

**Power Liftgate** (page 57).

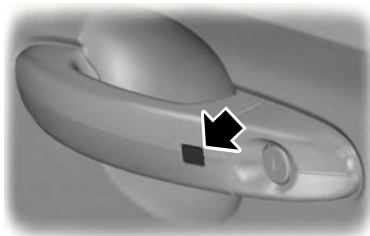
# Locks

## Activating Intelligent Access (If Equipped)

The intelligent access key must be within 3 feet (1 meter) of the vehicle.

### At the Front Doors

Pull a front exterior door handle. The door will unlock and can be opened.



E87384

Press and hold the door handle lock sensor to lock the vehicle. To avoid unlocking the door inadvertently, be sure to only touch the lock sensor and not other areas of the door handle.

### At the Liftgate

Press the exterior liftgate release button on the top of the liftgate pull-cup handle.

## Smart Unlocks For Integrated Keyhead Transmitter

This feature helps to prevent you from locking yourself out of the vehicle if your key is still in the ignition.

When you open one of the front doors and lock the vehicle with the power door lock control, all the doors will lock then unlock if your key is still in the ignition.

The vehicle can still be locked with the key in the ignition by using the keyless entry keypad with the driver door closed, or by pressing the lock button on the transmitter even if the doors are not closed.

If both front doors are closed, the vehicle can be locked by any method, regardless of whether the key is in the ignition or not.

## Smart Unlocks For Intelligent Access Keys (If Equipped)

This feature helps to prevent you from unintentionally locking your intelligent access key inside your vehicle's passenger compartment or rear cargo area.

When you lock your vehicle using the driver or passenger power door lock control (with the door open, vehicle in park and ignition off), after you close the door the vehicle will search for an intelligent access key in the passenger compartment. If an intelligent access key is found inside the vehicle, all of the doors will immediately unlock and the horn will chirp, indicating that the intelligent access key is inside.

In order to override the smart unlock feature and intentionally lock the intelligent access key inside the vehicle, you can lock your vehicle after all doors are closed by using the keyless entry keypad, pressing the lock button on another intelligent access key or touching the locking area on the handle with another intelligent access key in your hand.

When you open one of the front doors and lock the vehicle using the power door lock control, all doors will lock then unlock if:

- the ignition is on, or
- the ignition is off and the vehicle is not in P (Park).

# Locks

---

## **Autolock and Autounlock (If Equipped)**

The autolock feature will lock all the doors when:

- all doors are closed
- the ignition is on
- you shift into any gear putting the vehicle in motion, and
- the vehicle attains a speed greater than 4 mph (7 km/h).

When autounlock is enabled, all doors will unlock when the driver door is opened.

## **Enabling or Disabling Autolock and Autounlock**

**Note:** *Your authorized dealer can perform this procedure, or you can do the procedure yourself.*

To enable or disable these features, do the following:

**Note:** *You will have 30 seconds to complete the procedure.*

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the power door lock button three times.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Press the power door lock button three times.
5. Switch the ignition on. The horn will chirp indicating the programming mode has been entered.

**Autolock:** Once in programming mode, each subsequent short press (less than 1 second) of the power door lock button will toggle autolock between on and off.

**Autounlock:** Each subsequent long press (more than 2 seconds) of the power door lock button will toggle autounlock between on and off.

**Note:** *The autounlock feature can be enabled or disabled independently of the autolock feature.*

## **Illuminated Entry**

The interior lamps and select exterior lamps will illuminate when the remote entry system is used to unlock the door(s).

The illuminated entry system will turn off the lights if:

- the ignition is on
- the remote transmitter lock control is pressed, or
- after 25 seconds of illumination.

The lights will not turn off if:

- they have been turned on with the dimmer control, or
- any door is open.

## **Illuminated Exit**

The interior lamps and select exterior lamps will illuminate when all doors are closed, the ignition is turned off and the key is removed from the ignition (integrated keyhead transmitter only).

The lamps will turn off if all the doors remain closed and:

- 25 seconds elapse
- the key is inserted in the ignition (integrated keyhead transmitter only)
- the START/STOP button is pressed (intelligent access key only).

## **Battery Saver**

If the courtesy lamps, dome lamps or headlamps are left on, the battery saver will shut them off 10 minutes after the ignition has been turned off.


## **Accessory Mode Battery Saver for Intelligent Access Keys (If Equipped)**


If you shut off the engine and leave the ignition in the on or accessory mode, the ignition will shut off after 30 minutes.

# Locks

## MANUAL LIFTGATE

### WARNINGS

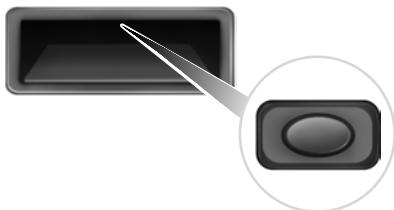
 It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

 Make sure that the liftgate is closed to prevent exhaust fumes from being drawn into the vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate door open, keep the vehicle well ventilated so outside air comes into the vehicle.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything (bike rack, etc.) from the spoiler, glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.





E138632


**To open the liftgate:** Press the button located in the top of the liftgate pull cup handle to unlatch the liftgate, then pull on the outside handle.

## POWER LIFTGATE (IF EQUIPPED)

### WARNINGS

 It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

 Make sure that the liftgate is closed to prevent exhaust fumes from being drawn into the vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate door open, keep the vehicle well ventilated so outside air comes into the vehicle.

 Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to play near an open or moving power liftgate.

**Note:** Cycling the ignition while the liftgate is power closing and is near the latch may cause the liftgate to reverse to full open position. Make sure that the liftgate is closed before operating or moving the vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. The liftgate or its components could be damaged.

**Note:** Do not hang anything (bike rack, etc.) from the spoiler, glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

The liftgate will only operate with the vehicle in P (Park).

## Locks

Three warning chimes will sound once as the liftgate begins to power close. Five short chimes indicate a problem with the open or close request, caused by:

- the ignition is on and the transmission is not in P (Park);
- or the battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage;
- or the vehicle speed is at or above 3 mph (5 km/h).

If the liftgate falls to the closed direction after the liftgate has stopped in the open position, four short warning chimes indicate excessive weight on the gate or a possible gas strut failure. See your authorized dealer if you still have the issue after the load is removed.

### Opening and Closing the Liftgate

#### WARNING



Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.



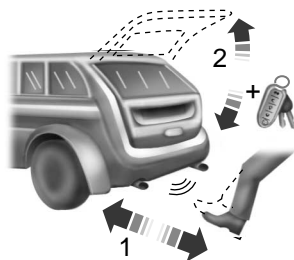
**To open or close from the instrument panel:** Press the instrument panel button.



**To open or close with the remote control:** Press the remote control button twice within three seconds.

#### To open or close using the hands-free liftgate feature (if equipped):

1. Make sure you have an intelligent access transmitter within 3 feet (1 meter) of the liftgate.



E142731

2. Raise and lower your leg, moving your foot toward and under, then away from, the rear bumper (similar to a kicking motion). The liftgate will power open or close.

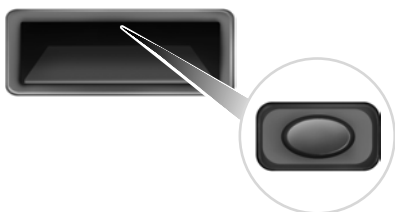
**Note:** Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stops the power operation.

**Note:** Splashing water may cause the hands-free liftgate to open. Keep the intelligent access transmitter away from the rear bumper detection area while washing your car.

#### To open with the outside liftgate control button:

1. Unlock the liftgate with the remote control or power door unlock control. If the intelligent access transmitter (if equipped) is within 3 feet (1 meter) of the liftgate, the liftgate will unlock when you press the liftgate release button.

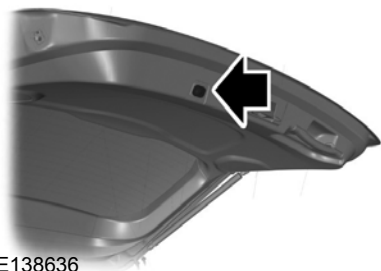
## Locks



E138632

2. Press the control button located in the top of the liftgate pull-cup handle.

**Note:** Allow the power system to open the liftgate after pressing the control. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stops the power operation.



E138636

**To close with the control on the liftgate:** Press and release the button.

### WARNING



Keep clear of the liftgate when activating the rear switch.

### Setting the Liftgate Open Height

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Manually move the liftgate to the desired height.
3. Press and hold the control button on the liftgate until a chime is heard, indicating the new height has been programmed.

**Note:** The height cannot be programmed if the liftgate position is too low.

The new open liftgate height will now be recalled when the power liftgate is opened. To change the programmed height, repeat the above procedure. Once the power liftgate is opened it can be manually moved to a different height.

When operating the power liftgate after a lower height than full-open has been programmed, the liftgate can be fully opened by manually pushing it upward to the maximum open position.

### Obstacle Detection

**When closing:** The system will stop when it detects an obstacle and two short chimes will sound. Once the obstacle is removed the liftgate can be closed under power.

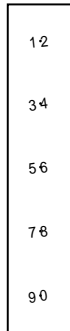
**Note:** Entering the vehicle while the liftgate is closing can cause the vehicle to bounce and activate obstacle detection. To prevent this, allow the power liftgate to fully close before entering the vehicle. Before driving off, check the instrument cluster for a liftgate or door ajar message or warning indicator. Driving off without first checking for the liftgate or door ajar message or warning indicator could result in the liftgate being left open, unintentionally, while you are driving.

**When opening:** The system will stop and two short chimes will sound when it detects an obstacle. Remove the obstacle to operate the liftgate.

# Locks

## KEYLESS ENTRY (IF EQUIPPED)

### SECURICODE™ KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD



E138637

You can use the keypad to:

- lock or unlock the doors
- recall memory seat and mirror positions (if equipped)
- program and erase user codes
- arm and disarm the anti-theft alarm.

The keypad can be operated with the factory set 5-digit entry code. The code is located on the owner's wallet card in the glove box and is available from your authorized dealer. You can also create up to five of your own 5-digit personal entry codes.

#### Programming a Personal Entry Code

To create your own personal entry code:

1. Enter the factory set code.
2. Press the 1-2 on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Enter your personal 5-digit code. Each number must be entered within five seconds of each other.

4. For memory recall feature, enter the sixth digit 1-2 to store driver 1 settings or 3-4 to store driver 2 settings.

**Note:** Pressing 5-6, 7-8, or 9-0 keypad numbers as a sixth digit will not recall a driver memory setting.

**Note:** The factory-set code cannot be associated with a memory setting.

5. The doors will lock then unlock to confirm that your personal entry code has been programmed.

You may also program a personal entry code through the MyFord Touch® system (if equipped). See **General Information** (page 326).

#### Tips:

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.
- The factory set code will work even if you have set your own personal code.

#### Erasing a Personal Code

1. Enter the factory set 5-digit code.
2. Press and release the 1-2 on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Press and hold the 1-2 for two seconds. This must be done within five seconds of completing Step 2.

All personal codes are now erased and only the factory set 5-digit code will work.

#### Anti-Scan Feature

The keypad will go into an anti-scan mode if the wrong code has been entered seven times (35 consecutive button presses). This mode disables the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp will flash.



# Locks

---

The anti-scan feature will turn off after:

- one minute of keypad inactivity
- pressing the unlock button on the remote control
- the ignition is turned on
- unlocking the vehicle using intelligent access (if equipped)

## Unlocking and Locking the Doors

### ***To Unlock the Driver's Door***

Enter the factory set 5-digit code or your personal code. Each number must be pressed within five seconds of each other. The interior lamps will illuminate.

**Note:** *All doors will unlock if the two-stage unlocking feature is disabled. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 54).*

### ***To Unlock All Doors***

Enter the factory set code or your personal code, then press the 3-4 control within five seconds.

### ***To Lock All Doors***

Press and hold 7-8 and 9-0 at the same time (with the driver's door closed). You do not need to enter the keypad code first.

## PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

**Note:** The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.

**Note:** Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting problems if they are too close to the key when starting the engine. Prevent these objects from touching the coded key while starting the engine. Switch the ignition off, move all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart the engine if a problem occurs.

**Note:** Do not leave a duplicate coded key in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.

### SecuriLock®

The system is an engine immobilization system. It is designed to help prevent the engine from being started unless a coded key programmed to your vehicle is used. Using the wrong key may prevent the engine from starting. A message may appear in the information display.

If you are unable to start the engine with a correctly coded key, a malfunction has happened and a message may appear in the information display.

### Automatic Arming

The vehicle is armed immediately after switching the ignition off.

### Automatic Disarming

Switching the ignition on with a coded key disarms the vehicle.

### Replacement Keys

**Note:** Your vehicle comes equipped with two integrated keyhead transmitters or two intelligent access keys.

The integrated keyhead transmitter functions as a programmed ignition key that operates all the locks and starts the vehicle, as well as a remote control.

The intelligent access key functions as a programmed key that operates the driver's door lock and activates the intelligent access with push button start systems, as well as a remote control.

If your programmed transmitters or standard SecuriLock coded keys (integrated keyhead transmitters only) are lost or stolen and you don't have an extra coded key, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. The key codes need to be erased from your vehicle and new coded keys will need to be programmed.

Store an extra programmed key away from the vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. See your authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

### Programming a Spare Integrated Keyhead Transmitter

**Note:** A maximum of eight coded keys can be programmed to your vehicle. All eight can be integrated keyhead transmitters.

You can program your own integrated keyhead transmitter or standard SecuriLock coded keys to your vehicle. This procedure will program both the engine immobilizer keycode and the remote entry portion of the remote control to your vehicle.

Only use integrated keyhead transmitters or standard SecuriLock keys.

# Security

---

You must have two previously programmed coded keys and the new unprogrammed key readily accessible. See your authorized dealer to have the spare key programmed if two previously programmed coded keys are not available.

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

1. Insert the first previously programmed coded key into the ignition.
2. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
3. Switch the ignition off and remove the first coded key from the ignition.
4. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off, insert the second previously coded key into the ignition.
5. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
6. Switch the ignition off and remove the second previously programmed coded key from the ignition.
7. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off and removing the previously programmed coded key, insert the new unprogrammed key into the ignition.
8. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least six seconds.
9. Remove the newly programmed coded key from the ignition.

If the key has been successfully programmed it will start the engine and operate the remote entry system (if the new key is an integrated keyhead transmitter).

If it was not programmed successfully, wait 10 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 8. If you are still unsuccessful, take your vehicle to your authorized dealer.

## Programming a Spare Intelligent Access Key

See your authorized dealer to have additional keys programmed to your vehicle.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM (IF EQUIPPED)

The system will warn you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle. It will be triggered if any door, the luggage compartment or the hood is opened without using the key or the remote control.

The park and turn lamps will flash and the horn will sound if unauthorized entry is attempted while the alarm is armed.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

### Arming the Alarm

The alarm is ready to arm when there is not a key in the ignition. Lock the vehicle to arm the alarm.

### Disarming the Alarm

Disarm the alarm by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control or keyless entry keypad.
- Switch the ignition on or start the vehicle.
- Use a key in the driver's door to unlock the vehicle, then switch the ignition on within 12 seconds.

# Steering Wheel

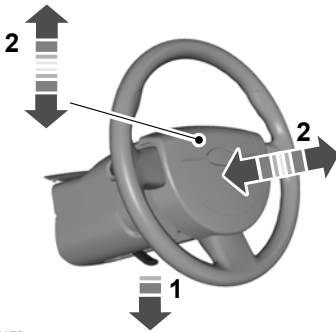
## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

### WARNING



Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 121).



E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



E95179

3. Lock the steering column.

## AUDIO CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

Select the required source on the audio unit.

You can operate the following functions with the control:

### Type 1

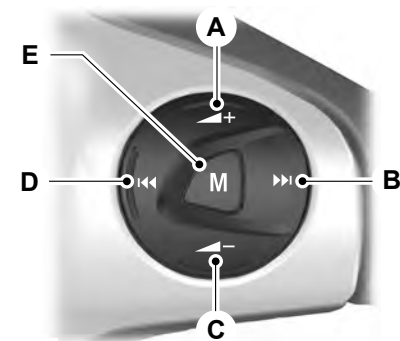


E145434

Use the arrows on the steering wheel to navigate through the menus. Press OK to make a selection.

# Steering Wheel

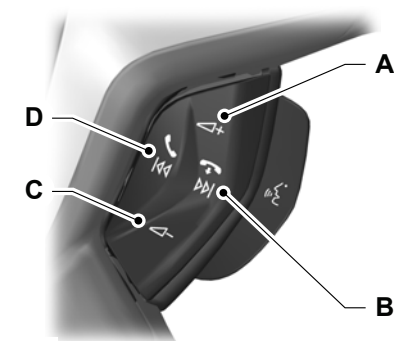
## Type 2



- A Volume up
- B Seek up or next
- C Volume down
- D Seek down or previous
- E Mode

Press M to select the audio source.

## Type 3



- A Volume up
- B Seek up or next
- C Volume down
- D Seek down or previous

### Seek, Next or Previous

Press the seek button to:

- tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset
- play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band
- seek through a track.

# Steering Wheel

## VOICE CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)



E129464

Pull the control to select or deselect voice control. See **SYNC®** (page 279). See **MyFord Touch®** (page 315).

### MyFord Touch® Controls (If Equipped)

Your steering wheel controls may also have these additional features.



Press to go to the home screen.



Press to go to the information screen.

See **MyFord Touch®** (page 315).

## CRUISE CONTROL



E142437

See **Cruise Control** (page 170).

## INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL



E130248

See **Information Displays** (page 84).

# Wipers and Washers

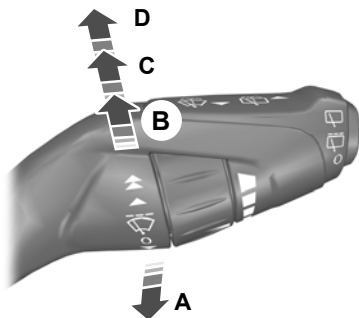
## WINDSHIELD WIPERS

**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before switching on the windshield wipers.

**Note:** Make sure the windshield wipers are switched off before entering a car wash.

**Note:** Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that doesn't resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.

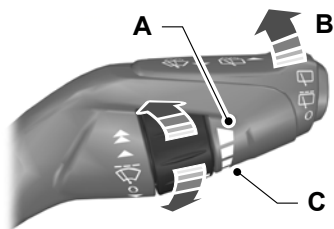
**Note:** Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.



E128444

- A Single wipe
- B Intermittent wipe
- C Normal wipe
- D High speed wipe

## Intermittent Wipe



E128445

- A Short wipe interval
- B Intermittent wipe
- C Long wipe interval

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

## Speed Dependent Wipers

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes will decrease.

## AUTOWIPERS (IF EQUIPPED)

**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before switching on the windshield wipers.

**Note:** Make sure the windshield wipers are switched off before entering a car wash.

**Note:** Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that doesn't resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.

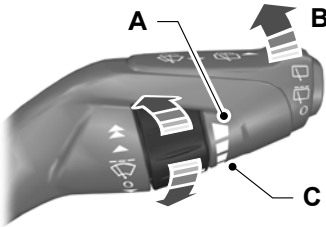
**Note:** If you switch autolamps on in conjunction with autowipers, your low beam headlamps will illuminate automatically when the rain sensor activates the windshield wipers continuously.

**Note:** Wet road conditions can cause unexpected wiping or smearing.

# Wipers and Washers

To reduce smearing we recommend the following:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers.
- Switch to normal or high speed wipe.
- Switch the autowipers off.



E128445

- A High sensitivity
- B On
- C Low sensitivity

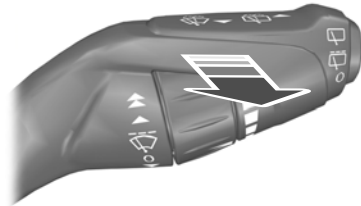
The wipers will function when moisture is detected on the windshield. The rain sensor will continue to monitor the amount of moisture on the windshield and adjust the speed of the wipers automatically.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor. With low sensitivity, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a large amount of moisture on the windshield. With high sensitivity, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a small amount of moisture on the windshield.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. Sensor performance will be affected if the area around the interior mirror is dirty. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or flies hit the windshield.

## WINDSHIELD WASHERS

**Note:** Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.



E129188

The washers will spray for as long as you pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever, the wipers will operate for a short time.

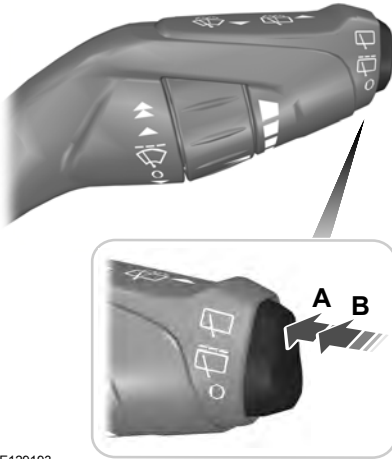
A wipe will occur a few seconds after washing to clear any remaining washer fluid.



# Wipers and Washers

## REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

### Rear Window Wiper



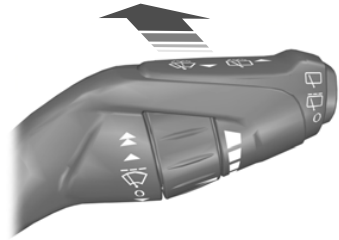
E129193

- A Intermittent wipe
- B Low speed wipe

Press the button at the end of the lever to change between off, intermittent and low speed.

When you shift into R (Reverse), the rear wiper will switch on to intermittent if the front wipers are activated.

### Rear Window Washer



E129194

The washer will spray for as long as you push the lever away from you. When you release the lever, the wiper will operate for a short time.

# Lighting

## LIGHTING CONTROL



E142449

- A Off
- B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps
- C Headlamps

## High Beams



E130140

Push the lever forward to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

## Headlamp Flasher



E142450

Pull the lever toward you slightly and release it to flash the headlamps.

## AUTOLAMPS (IF EQUIPPED)

**Note:** It may be necessary to switch your headlamps on manually in severe weather conditions.



E142451

The headlamps will switch on and off automatically in low light situations or during inclement weather.

The headlamps will remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. You can adjust the time delay using the information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 84).

## Lighting

**Note:** If you switch autolamps on in conjunction with autowipers, low beam headlamps will illuminate automatically when the rain sensor activates the windshield wipers continuously.

### INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

**Note:** If you disconnect the battery or it becomes discharged, the illuminated components will switch to the maximum setting.

#### Vehicles With Front Fog Lamps



E132712

Press repeatedly or press and hold until the desired level is reached.

#### Vehicles Without Front Fog Lamps



E142452

- A Press repeatedly or press and hold to dim.
- B Press repeatedly or press and hold to brighten.

### HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

### DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS (IF EQUIPPED)

#### WARNING



Always remember to switch your headlamps on in low light situations or during inclement weather. The system does not activate the tail lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

# Lighting

If equipped with halogen headlamps, the system switches the low beam headlamps on at a reduced intensity in day light conditions.

If equipped with high intensity discharge (HID) headlamps, the system switches the fog lamps on in day light conditions.

To switch the system on, switch the ignition on, and switch the lighting control to the off, autolamp, or parking lamp position.

## FRONT FOG LAMPS



E142453

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except off and the high beams are not on.

## DIRECTION INDICATORS



E130141

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.

## INTERIOR LAMPS

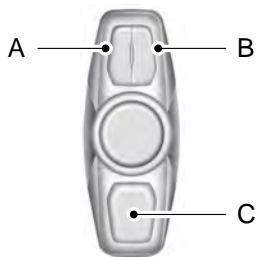
The lamps will switch on when one of the following conditions have been met:

- You open any door.
- You press a remote control button.
- You press switch B on the front interior lamp.

### Front Interior Lamp

**Note:** Press A to switch them off when you open a door. The indicator lamp will illuminate yellow. Press A again to switch them back on. The indicator lamp will illuminate blue.

# Lighting



E142454

- A Door function switch.
- B All lamps on and off switch.
- C Individual lamp on and off switch.

## Rear Interior Lamp (If Equipped)

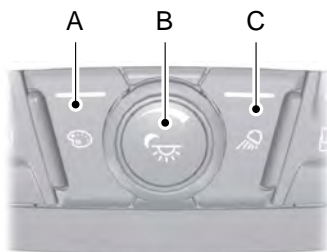


E142455

You can switch individual map lamps on independently by pressing switch A.

## AMBIENT LIGHTING (IF EQUIPPED)

The ambient lighting system illuminates the interior with a choice of several colors. The ambient lighting control is located in the overhead console.



E142456

- A Color palette
- B Control knob
- C Search mode

Rotate B past the first detent to switch on and adjust to the desired brightness.

Press A to cycle through the color choices.

Press C to switch on all interior lamps and the ambient lighting. Press C again to switch off the interior lamps and return the ambient lighting to the previously selected color.

The ambient lighting will switch on when the following conditions have been met:

- you switch the ignition on
- you switch the headlamps on
- the outside ambient light level is low.

The ambient lighting will remain on until you switch the ignition off and one of the following conditions have been met:

- you lock your vehicle
- the accessory delay timer expires.

# Windows and Mirrors

## POWER WINDOWS

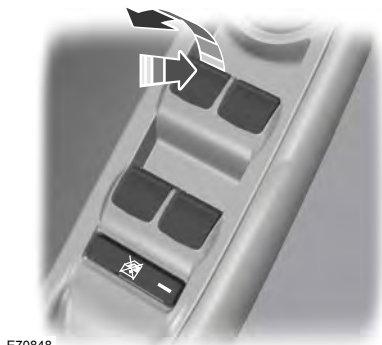
### WARNINGS



Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.



When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



E70848

**Note:** You may hear a rumbling noise when just one of the windows are open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.

Press the switch to open the window.

Lift the switch to close the window.

### One-Touch Down (If Equipped)

Press the switch fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

### One-Touch Up (If Equipped)

Lift the switch fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

## Window Lock



E70850

Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It will illuminate when the rear window controls are locked.

### Bounce-Back (If Equipped)

The window will stop automatically while closing. It will reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

### Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

Proceed as follows to override this protection feature when there is a resistance, e.g. in winter:

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Close the window a third time to the point of resistance. The bounce-back feature is now disabled and you can close the window manually. The window will go past the point of resistance and you can close it fully.

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible if the window does not close after the third attempt.

# Windows and Mirrors

## Resetting the Bounce-Back Feature

### WARNING



The bounce-back function remains deactivated until you have reset the memory.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

1. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the switch.
3. Lift the switch again for one more second.
4. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open.
5. Release the switch.
6. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
7. Open the window and then try to close it automatically.
8. Reset and repeat the procedure if the window does not close automatically.

### Accessory Delay (If Equipped)

You can use the window switches for several minutes after you have switched the ignition off or until either front door is opened.

## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

### Power Exterior Mirrors

### WARNING



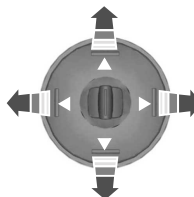
Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving.



A ← B → C

E70846

- A Left-hand mirror  
B Off  
C Right-hand mirror



E70847

Press the arrows to adjust the mirror.

### Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

### Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 119).

### Memory Mirrors (If Equipped)

You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function. See **Memory Function** (page 125).

# Windows and Mirrors

## Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors (If Equipped)

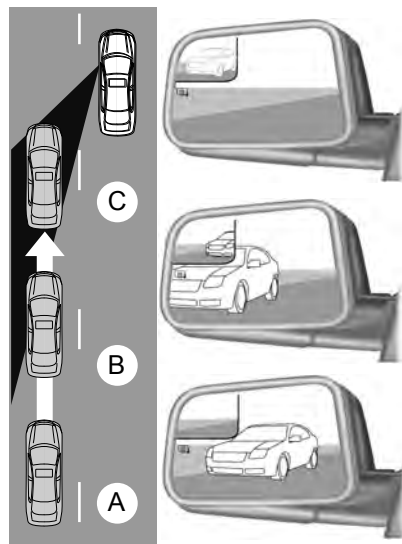
### WARNING



Objects in the blind spot mirror are closer than they appear.

Blind spot mirrors have an integrated convex mirror built into the upper outboard corner of the exterior mirrors. They are designed to increase your visibility along the side of your vehicle.

Check the main mirror first before a lane change, then check the blind spot mirror. If no vehicles are present in the blind spot mirror and the traffic in the adjacent lane is at a safe distance, signal that you intend to change lanes. Glance over your shoulder to verify traffic is clear and carefully change lanes.



E138665

The image of the approaching vehicle is small and near the inboard edge of the main mirror when it is at a distance. The image becomes larger and begins to move outboard across the main mirror as the vehicle approaches (A). The image will transition from the main mirror and begin to appear in the blind spot mirror as the vehicle approaches (B). The vehicle will transition to your peripheral field of view as it leaves the blind spot mirror (C).

## Blind Spot Monitor (If Equipped)

See **Blind Spot Monitor** (page 171).

## INTERIOR MIRROR

### WARNING



Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

## Auto-Dimming Mirror (If Equipped)

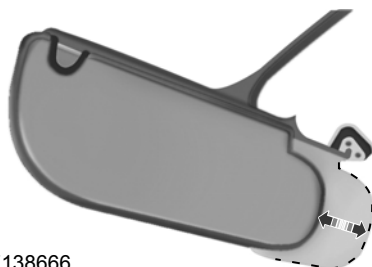
**Note:** Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.



# Windows and Mirrors

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

## SUN VISORS



E138666

Rotate the sun visor toward the side window and extend it rearward for extra shade.

## Illuminated Vanity Mirror (If Equipped)




E138667


Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.

## MOONROOF (IF EQUIPPED)

### WARNINGS

 Do not let children play with the moonroof or leave them unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.

### WARNINGS

 When closing the moonroof, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

The moonroof and sunscreen controls are located on the overhead console.

The moonroof and sunscreen have a one-touch open and close feature. To stop them during one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

## Opening and Closing the Sunscreen

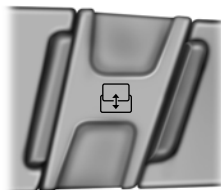


E138668

Press and release the rear of the control to open the sunroof.

Press and release the front of the control to close the sunroof. If it is open, the moonroof will automatically close before the sunroof closes.

## Opening and Closing the Moonroof



E138669

## Windows and Mirrors

---

Press and release the rear of the control to open the moonroof. If it is closed, the sunscreen will automatically open before the moonroof opens. The moonroof will stop short of the fully opened position.

**Note:** *This position helps to reduce wind noise or rumbling which may happen with the moonroof fully open. Press and hold the control again to fully open the moonroof.*

Press and release the front of the control to close the moonroof.

### **Bounce-Back**

The moonroof will stop automatically while closing. It will reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

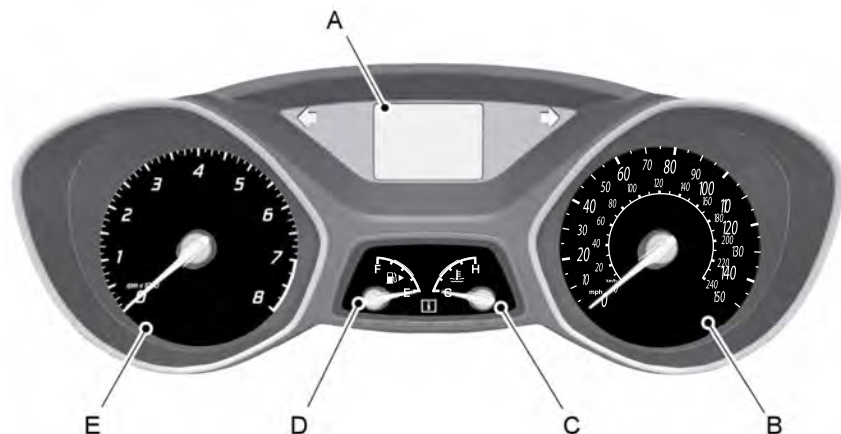
Press and hold the front of the control within two seconds of a bounce-back event to override this function. While bounce-back is active, the closing force increases for each of the next three times that you close the moonroof.

### **Venting the Moonroof**

Press and release the front of the control to vent the moonroof. Press and release the rear of the control to close the moonroof.

# Instrument Cluster

## GAUGES



E145825

- A Information display
- B Speedometer
- C Engine coolant temperature gauge
- D Fuel gauge
- E Tachometer

## Information Display

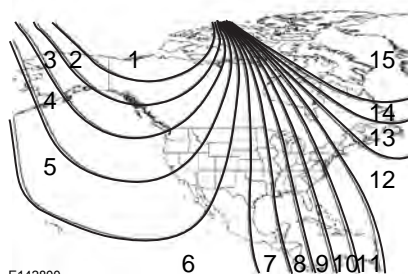
### Compass (If Equipped)

Displays the vehicle's heading direction.

To calibrate and set the compass zone use the information display menu. See **Information Displays** (page 84).

Use the diagram to determine your magnetic zone.

# Instrument Cluster



E142800

## Odometer

Located in the bottom of the information display Registers the accumulated distance your vehicle has traveled.

## Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

## Trip Computer

See **Trip Computer** (page 86).

## Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **General Information** (page 84).

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

### WARNING



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

At normal operating temperature, the needle will remain in the center section.

**Note:** Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been resolved.

If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the engine, switch the ignition off and determine the cause once the engine has cooled down. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 222).

## Fuel Gauge

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of the vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

## WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators will alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

**Note:** Some warning indicators appear in the information display and function the same as a warning lamp but do not display when you start your vehicle.

## Airbag - Front



If it fails to illuminate when you start your vehicle, continues to flash or remains on, it indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

## Anti-Lock Braking System



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have the normal braking system (without ABS) unless the brake system warning lamp is also illuminated. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

# Instrument Cluster

## Battery



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

## Blind Spot Monitor (If Equipped)



It will illuminate when you switch this feature off or in conjunction with a message. See **Blind Spot Monitor** (page 171). See **Information Messages** (page 87).

## Brake System



It will illuminate when you engage the parking brake with the Ignition on.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have the system checked immediately by your authorized dealer.

### WARNING



Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

## Cruise Control (If Equipped)



It will illuminate when you switch this feature on. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 170).

## Direction Indicator



Illuminates when the left or right turn signal or the hazard warning flasher is turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 231).

## Engine Oil



If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 221).

**Note:** *Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.*

## Fasten Safety Belt



It will illuminate and a chime will sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt. See **Safety Belt Minder** (page 31).

## Fog Lamps - Front (If Equipped)



It will illuminate when you switch the front fog lamps on.

## High Beam



It will illuminate when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

# Instrument Cluster

## Information (If Equipped)



It will illuminate when a new message is stored in the information display. It will be red or amber in color depending on the severity of the message and will remain on until the cause of the message has been rectified. See **Information Messages** (page 87).

## Low Fuel Level



It will illuminate when the fuel level is low or the fuel tank is nearly empty. Refuel as soon as possible.

## Low Tire Pressure Warning



It will illuminate when your tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tire pressure as soon as possible.

It will also illuminate momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

## Parking Lamps



It will illuminate when you switch the parking lamps on.

## Service Engine Soon



If the service engine soon indicator light stays illuminated after the engine is started, it indicates that the On Board Diagnostics system (OBD) has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emissions control system. Refer to On board diagnostics (OBD) in the Fuel and Refueling chapter for more information about having your vehicle serviced. See **Emission Control System** (page 143).

If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately.

**Note:** *Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components.*

The service engine soon indicator light illuminates when the ignition is first turned on prior to engine start to check the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing.

Normally, the service engine soon light will stay on until the engine is cranked, then turn itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the service engine soon light blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. See **Emission Control System** (page 143).

# Instrument Cluster

---

## Stability Control



It will flash when the system is active. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction the system will switch off. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

## Stability Control Off



It will illuminate when you switch the system off. It will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off.

## AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

### Key in Ignition Warning Chime

Sounds when you open the driver's door and you have left the key in the ignition with it in the off or accessory position.

### Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver's door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

### Parking Brake On Warning Chime

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

# Information Displays

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and that you comply with all applicable laws.

Various systems on your vehicle can be controlled using the information display controls on the steering wheel. Corresponding information is displayed in the information display.

### Information Display Controls



E138659

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a sub-menu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a menu.
- Press and hold the left arrow button at any time to return to the main menu display (escape button).
- Press the OK button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

### Menu Structure - Information Display

#### All Vehicles

You can access the menu using the information display control.

**Note:** Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.

Trip 1 and 2 <sup>1</sup>		
Distance to E		
Trip 1 or 2		
Trip timer		
Average fuel	Ford EcoMode	Anticipation



## Information Displays

Trip 1 and 2 <sup>1</sup>		
		Speed
		Ford EcoMode <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See **Trip Computer** (page 86).

<sup>2</sup> See **Eco Mode** (page 175).

Information
Intelligent 4WD
MyKey Dist.
MyKey Info

Settings			
Driver Assist	Traction Ctrl	On or Off	
	Blind spot	On or Off	
	Cross traffic alert	On or Off	
	Hill Start Assist	On or Off	
	Rear Park Aid	On or Off	
Lighting	Rain Light	On or Off	
	Dimming	Auto or Manual	
	Autolamp delay	Off or xx Seconds	
Display	Navigation info	Always off, On guidance or Always on	
	Language	Choose your applicable setting	
	Distance	Choose your applicable setting	
	Temperature	Choose your applicable setting	
Chimes	Park Slot Information Warning		
Convenience	Compass (non–navigation systems only)	Display	On or Off
		Set Zone	Zone (1–15)

## Information Displays

Settings			
		Calibrate	Hold OK to Calibrate
	Remote Start	Climate Control	Heater – A/C / Auto or Last Settings
			Front Defrost / Automatic or Off
			Rear Defrost / Automatic or Off
		Duration	(5, 10 or 15 minutes)
		Quiet Start	On/Off
		Restore Default	
		System	Enable or Disable
MyKey	Create MyKey	Hold OK to Create MyKey	
	Traction Ctrl	Always On or User Selectable	
	Max Speed	80 MPH (130 km/h) or Off	
	Speed Warning	45 mph (75 km/h), 55 mph (90 km/h), 65 mph (105 km/h) or Off	
	Volume Limiter	On or Off	
	Clear MyKeys	Hold OK to Clear All MyKeys	
System Reset	Hold OK to Reset System to Factory Default		

### System Check

All active warnings will display first if applicable. The system check menu may appear different based upon equipment options and current vehicle status. Use the up/down arrow buttons to scroll through the list.

## TRIP COMPUTER

### Resetting the Trip Computer

Press and hold OK on the current screen to reset the respective trip, distance, time and average fuel information.

### Trip Odometer

Registers the distance traveled of individual journeys.

### Trip Timer

Registers the time of individual journeys.

# Information Displays

## Fuel Used

Indicates the approximate distance the vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

## Average Fuel

Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

## All Value

Indicates all the respective trip, distance, time and average fuel information.

## INFORMATION MESSAGES

**Note:** Depending on the vehicle options equipped with your vehicle, not all of the messages will display or be available. Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened depending upon which cluster type you have.



E130248

Press the OK button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. Other messages will be removed automatically after a short time.

Certain messages need to be confirmed before you can access the menus.

## Message Indicator (If Equipped)



The message indicator illuminates to supplement some messages. It will be red or amber depending on the severity of the message and will remain on until the cause of the message has been rectified.

Some messages will be supplemented by a system specific symbol with a message indicator.

## Airbag

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Airbag fault Service now	Amber	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact your authorized dealer.

## Information Displays

---

### Alarm

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Alarm activated Check Vehicle	Amber	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry. See <b>Anti-Theft Alarm</b> (page 63).
Alarm fault Service required	-	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact your authorized dealer.

### Battery and Charging System

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Electrical system over-voltage Stop safely	Red	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Contact your authorized dealer.
Battery low See manual	Amber	Displays to warn of a low battery condition. Turn off all unneeded electrical accessories. Contact your authorized dealer.

### Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System

Message	Message Indicator	Action
BLIS Low visibility See manual	Amber	Displayed when the blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See <b>Blind Spot Monitor</b> (page 171).
BLIS: X sensor fault Service required	Amber	Displayed when a fault with the system has occurred. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
BLIS not available Trailer attached	Amber	Displayed when the system is not available due to trailer use. See <b>Blind Spot Monitor</b> (page 171).
Cross Traffic Vehicle coming from X	Amber	Displayed when the system detects a vehicle. See <b>Blind Spot Monitor</b> (page 171).

## Information Displays

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Cross Traffic Sensor blocked See manual	Amber	Displayed when the blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See <b>Blind Spot Monitor</b> (page 171).
Cross Traffic fault Service required	Amber	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact your authorized dealer.
Cross Traffic disabled Trailer attached	-	Displayed when the system is not available due to trailer use. See <b>Blind Spot Monitor</b> (page 171).

### Doors

Message	Message Indicator	Action
X door open	Red	Displays when the door(s) listed is not completely closed and the vehicle is moving.
	-	Displays when the door(s) listed is not completely closed.
trunk ajar	Red	Displays when the luggage compartment is not completely closed and the vehicle is moving.
	-	Displays when the luggage compartment is not completely closed.
Hood open	Red	Displays when the hood is not completely closed and the vehicle is moving.
	-	Displays when the hood is not completely closed.

## Information Displays

### Engine

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Engine fault Service now	Amber	Engine service is required. Contact your authorized dealer.
High engine temperature Stop safely	Red	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop the vehicle in a safe place and allow to engine to cool. If the problem persists, contact your authorized dealer. See <b>Engine Coolant Check</b> (page 222).

### Hill Start Assist

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Hill start assist not available	Amber	Displays when hill start assist is not available. Contact your authorized dealer. See <b>Hill Start Assist</b> (page 149).

### Keyless Vehicle

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Ford KeyFree Key inside vehicle	Amber	Displays to remind you that the key is in the trunk. See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 135).
Ford KeyFree No key detected	-	Displayed if the key is not detected by the system. See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 135).
Switch ign. off Press ENGINE Start/Stop button	Red	Displayed as a reminder to turn off the vehicle. See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 135).

## Information Displays

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Press brake to start	-	Displayed as a reminder to press the brake while starting the vehicle.
Ford KeyFree Key not inside car	Red	Displayed when a valid key is not detected within the vehicle. See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 135).
Key Battery low Replace soon	-	Displays when the key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible. See <b>Remote Control</b> (page 44).

## Lighting

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Brake lamp Bulb fault	-	Displays when the brake lamp bulb has burned out. Contact your authorized dealer.
Low beam Bulb fault	-	Displays when the low beam headlamp bulb has burned out. Contact your authorized dealer.
Headlamp fault Service required	Amber	Displays when an electrical system problem occurs with the headlamp system. Contact your authorized dealer.

## Information Displays

### Maintenance

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Engine oil change due	-	Displays when the engine oil life is depleted and requires a change. See <b>Engine Oil Check</b> (page 221).
Brake fluid level low Service now	Red	Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. See <b>Brake Fluid Check</b> (page 225).
Washer fluid level low	-	Displays when the washer fluid is low and needs to be refilled. See <b>Washer Fluid Check</b> (page 225).
Check fuel fill inlet	-	Displays when the fuel fill inlet was not properly closed. See <b>Refueling</b> (page 142).

### MyKey

Message	Message Indicator	Action
MyKey active Drive Safely	-	Displays when MyKey is active.
MyKey Speed Limited to XX MPH/km/h	-	Displays when starting the vehicle and MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on.
MyKey Vehicle Near Top Speed	Amber	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is approaching 80 mph (130 km/h).
MyKey Vehicle at Top Speed	Amber	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is reached.
MyKey Check Speed Drive Safely	-	Displays when MyKey is active.
MyKey Buckle Up to Unmute Audio	-	Displays when a MyKey is in use and Belt-Minder is activated.
MyKey Park aid cannot be deactivated	-	Displays when a MyKey is in use and park aid is activated.



## Information Displays

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Key is Already a MyKey	-	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
Hold key next to symbol on steering column	-	Displays when programming a MyKey.
MyKey ESC cannot be deactivated	-	Displays when programming a MyKey.

### Park Aid

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Parking aid malfunction Service required	Amber	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer. See <b>Parking Aid</b> (page 161).

### Park Brake

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Park brake applied	Red	Displays when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact your authorized dealer.

## Information Displays

---

### Power Steering

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Steering loss Stop safely	Red	The power steering system is not working. Stop the vehicle a safe place. Contact your authorized dealer.
Steering assist fault Service required	Amber	The power steering system is not working. Stop the vehicle a safe place. Contact your authorized dealer.
Steering fault Service now	Amber	The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system or passive entry or passive start system requires service. Contact your authorized dealer.

### Starting System

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Press brake to start	-	Displays when starting the vehicle as a reminder to apply the brake.
Cranking time exceeded	-	Displays when the vehicle fails to start.

### Transmission and Four-Wheel Drive

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Transmission fault Service now	-	See your authorized dealer.
Transmission overtemperature Stop safely	Amber	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop in a safe place as soon as it's possible.
Transmission Service required	Amber	See your authorized dealer.
Transmission Hot Stop or Speed Up	-	Transmission is getting hot. Stop to let it cool or speed up.

## Information Displays

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Transmission Hot Wait ...	-	Transmission is hot. Wait as needed to let it cool.
4WD fault Service required	Amber	The system is not functioning correctly and defaulted to front-wheel drive. See your authorized dealer. See <b>Using Four-Wheel Drive</b> (page 151).
4WD Off	Amber	Displays when the system disables automatically and enters front-wheel drive only mode to protect driveline components. See <b>Using Four-Wheel Drive</b> (page 151).
4WD temporarily disabled	Amber	The system has overheated and defaulted to front-wheel drive. See <b>Using Four-Wheel Drive</b> (page 151).
4WD restored	-	Displays when system operation has been restored. See <b>Using Four-Wheel Drive</b> (page 151).
Transmission not in Park Select P	-	Displays as a reminder to shift into park.
Press brake to unlock gearshift lever	-	Displays to request the operator to apply the brake as needed by the transmission.
Gearshift lever unlocked	-	Displays when the transmission shift lever is unlocked and free to select gears.

## Information Displays

---

### Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Low Tire Pressure	Amber	Displays when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. See <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 257).
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	Amber	Displays when the tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer. See <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 257).
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	Amber	Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, see <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 257). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

### Traction Control

Message	Message Indicator	Action
Traction control off	-	Displays when the traction control system has been switched off. See <b>Using Traction Control</b> (page 158).

# Audio System

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

- AM: 530, 540-1700, 1710 kHz
- FM: 87.9-107.7, 107.9 MHz

Radio Reception Factors	
<b>Distance/Strength</b>	The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
<b>Terrain</b>	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
<b>Station overload</b>	When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result the audio system muting.

### CD and CD Player Information

**Note:** *CD units are designed to play commercially-pressed 4.75 inch (12 centimeter) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.*

**Note:** *CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact your authorized dealer for further information.*

**Note:** *Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.*

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only, wiping from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods of time.

### MP3 Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 disc playback: MP3 track mode (system default) and MP3 folder mode.
- MP3 track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 disc. The player numbers each MP3 track on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.

## Audio System

---

- MP3 folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 tracks on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) and all folders containing MP3 files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than mp3), only files with the .mp3 extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all .mp3 files are played, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the .mp3 files in the current folder.

### AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD

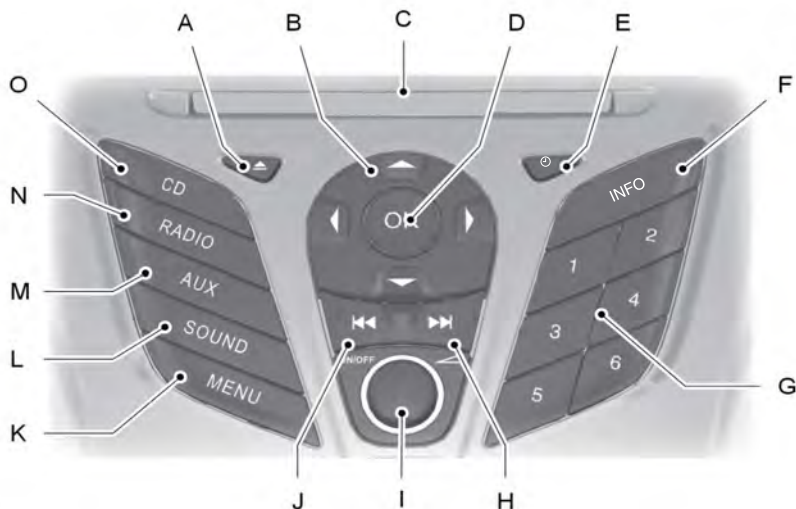
#### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

---

## Audio System



E142600

- A **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.
- B **Cursor arrows:** Press to scroll through on-screen choices.
- C **CD slot:** Insert a CD.
- D **OK:** Press to confirm on-screen selections.
- E **Clock:** Press to set the time. Use the H and M buttons outside the audio display to adjust the hours and minutes. Press OK to finish. (The clock can also be set by pressing MENU, then scrolling to the clock settings menu.)
- F **INFO:** Press to access radio or CD information.
- G **Number block:** Press a button to store your favorite radio stations. When tuned to a station, press and hold the button until sound returns.
- H **Seek:** Press to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD.
- I **ON/OFF:** Press to switch the audio system on or off by pressing the button. Turn to adjust the volume.
- J **Seek:** Press to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD.

## Audio System

---

- K **MENU:** Press to access different audio system features. See **Menu Structure** later in this chapter.
- L **SOUND:** Press to adjust the sound settings for Bass, Treble, Balance and Fade.
- M **AUX:** Press to access the media features of the SYNC® system by pressing MENU, then AUX. See **SYNC®** (page 279).
- N **RADIO:** Press to access different radio features by pressing RADIO, then MENU. See **Menu Structure** later in this chapter.
- O **CD:** Press to access different CD features by pressing CD, then MENU. See **Menu Structure** later in this chapter.

### AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD/SYNC

#### WARNING

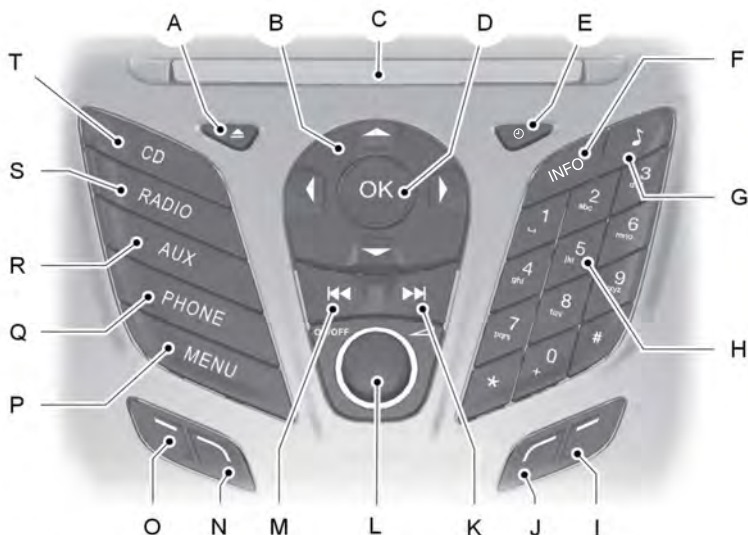


Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

---



## Audio System



E142601

- A **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.
- B **Cursor arrows:** Press to scroll through on-screen choices.
- C **CD slot:** Insert a CD.
- D **OK:** Press to confirms on-screen selections.
- E **Clock:** Press to set the time. Use the H and M buttons outside the audio display to adjust the hours and minutes. Press OK to finish. (The clock can also be set by pressing MENU, then scrolling to the clock settings menu.)
- F **INFO:** Press to access radio or CD information.
- G **SOUND:** Press to adjust the sound settings for Bass, Treble, Balance and Fade.
- H **Number block:** Press to store your favorite radio stations, when in radio mode. When tuned to a station, press and hold a button until sound returns. When in CD mode, press a button to select a track. In phone mode, use the buttons to dial a phone number.
- I **Function button 4:** Press to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- J **Function button 3:** Press to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

# Audio System

---

- K **Seek:** Press to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD.
- L **ON/OFF:** Press to switch the audio system on or off by pressing the button. Turn the dial to adjust the volume.
- M **Seek:** Press to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD.
- N **Function button 2:** Press to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- O **Function button 1:** Press to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- P **MENU:** Press to access different audio system features. See **Menu Structure** later in this chapter.
- Q **PHONE:** Press to access the phone features of the SYNC® system by pressing MENU, then PHONE. See **SYNC®** (page 279).
- R **AUX:** Press to access the media features of the SYNC® system by pressing MENU, then AUX. See **SYNC®** (page 279).
- S **RADIO:** Press to access different radio features by pressing RADIO, then MENU. See **Menu Structure** later in this chapter.
- T **CD:** Press to access different CD features by pressing CD, then MENU. See **Menu Structure** later in this chapter.

## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD/SATELLITE RADIO/SYNC

### WARNING



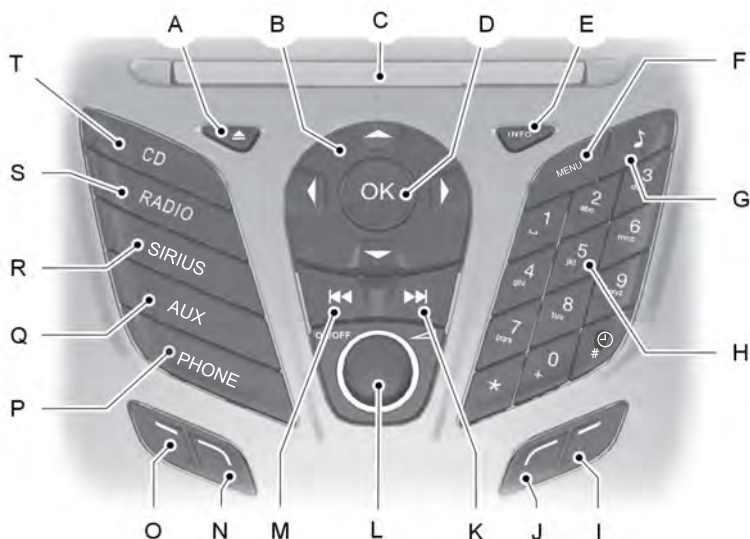
Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

---

**Note:** *Your audio system can operate for up to one hour after the ignition is turned off. Press the ON/OFF control to operate the system with the ignition turned off. The system automatically turns off after one hour.*

**Note:** *Some features such as SIRIUS satellite radio may not be available in your location. Check with your authorized dealer.*

# Audio System



E142602

- A **Eject** Press to eject a CD.
- B **Cursor arrows:** Press to scroll through on-screen choices.
- C **CD slot:** Insert a CD.
- D **OK:** Press to confirm on-screen selections.
- E **INFO:** Press to access radio or CD information.
- F **MENU:** Press to access different audio system features. See **Menu Structure** later in this chapter.
- G **SOUND:** Press to adjust the sound settings for Bass, Treble, Balance and Fade.
- H **Number block:** Press a button to store your favorite radio stations, when in radio mode. When tuned to a station, press and hold the button until sound returns. When in CD mode, press a button to select a track. In phone mode, use the buttons to dial a phone number. In clock mode, use the H and M buttons outside the audio display to adjust the hours and minutes. Press OK to finish. (The clock can also be set by pressing MENU, then scrolling to the clock settings menu.)
- I **Function button 4:** Press to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

## Audio System

---

- J **Function button 3:** Press to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- K **Seek:** Press to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD.
- L **ON/OFF:** Press to switch the audio system on or off by pressing the button. Turn to adjust the volume.
- M **Seek:** Press to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD.
- N **Function button 2:** Press to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- O **Function button 1:** Press to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- P **PHONE:** Press to access the phone features of the SYNC® system by pressing MENU, then PHONE. See **SYNC®** (page 279).
- Q **AUX:** Press to access the media features of the SYNC® system by pressing MENU, then AUX. See **SYNC®** (page 279).
- R **SIRIUS:** Press to access different satellite radio features by pressing SIRIUS, then MENU. See **Menu Structure** later in this chapter.
- S **RADIO:** Press to access different radio features by pressing RADIO, then MENU. See **Menu Structure** later in this chapter.
- T **CD:** Press to access different CD features by pressing CD, then MENU. See **Menu Structure** later in this chapter.

# Audio System

## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: PREMIUM AM/FM/CD

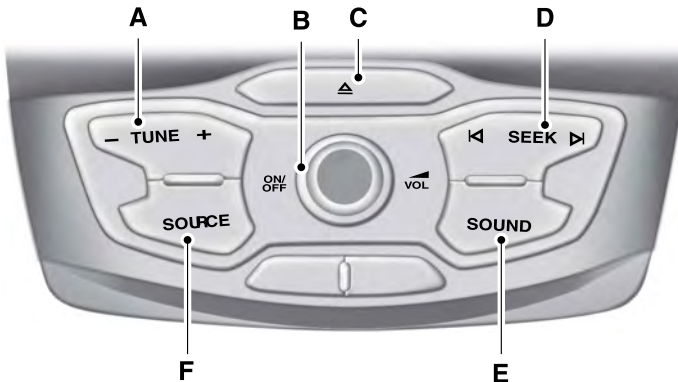
### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** The CD slot is directly above the touchscreen.

**Note:** Most of the audio features are controlled through the MyFord Touch® system. See **MyFord Touch®** (page 315).



E143843

- A **- TUNE +:** Press to search the frequency band in individual increments.
- B **ON/OFF and Volume:** Press to switch the audio system on and off. Turn the dial to adjust the volume.
- C **Eject:** Eject a CD.
- D **SEEK:** Press to go to the next station up or down the radio frequency band or the next or previous track on a CD.

## Audio System

- E **SOUND:** Press to adjust the sound settings for Bass, Treble, Balance and Fade.
- F **SOURCE:** Press to access different audio modes such as AM, FM and A/V Input.

### AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SONY AM/FM/CD

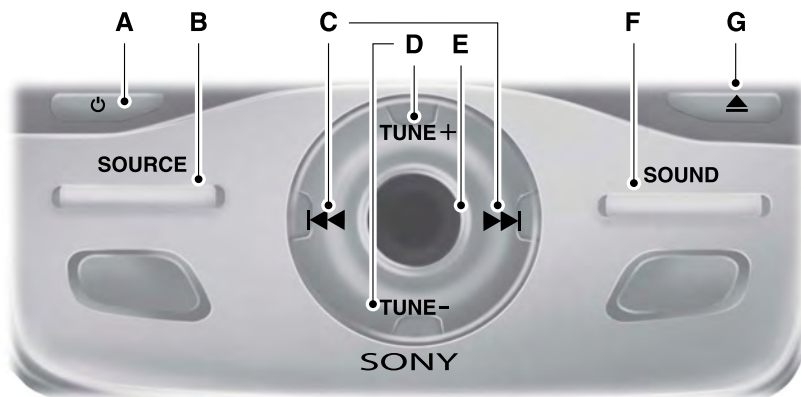
#### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** The CD slot is directly above the touchscreen.

**Note:** Most of the audio features are controlled through the MyFord Touch® system. See **MyFord Touch®** (page 315).



E143844

- A **On/Off:** Press to switch the audio system on and off.
- B **SOURCE:** Press to access different audio modes such as AM, FM and A/V Input.

# Audio System

- C **Seek:** Press to go to the next station up or down the radio frequency band or the next or previous track on a CD.
- D **- TUNE +:** Press to search the frequency band in individual increments.
- E **Volume:** Turn the dial to adjust the volume.
- F **SOUND:** Press to adjust the sound settings for Bass, Treble, Balance and Fade.
- G **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.

## Menu Structure

**Note:** Depending on your system, some options may appear slightly different, not at all or on-screen and able to be selected using the function buttons.

Press MENU.

Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through the options (if active).

Press the right arrow to enter a menu.  
Press the left arrow to exit a menu.

Radio	
Manual tune	Use the left and right arrows to go up or down the frequency band.
Scan	Select for a brief sampling of all available channels.
Autostore	Select to store the six strongest local stations on the AM and FM frequency bands.
PTY/Set category	Select to have the system search by certain music categories (rock, pop, country, etc).
RBDS/RDS	Select to view additional broadcast data, if available. This feature defaults to off. RBDS/RDS must be on for you to set a category.

SIRIUS	
Scan	Select for a brief sampling of all available channels.
Show ESN	Select to view your satellite radio electronic serial number (ESN). You will need this number when communicating with SIRIUS® to activate, modify or track your account.
Channel guide	Select to view available satellite radio channels. Press OK to select Tune Channel, Skip Channel or Lock Channel. Once a channel is skipped or locked, you can only access it by pressing Direct and entering the channel number. Locking or unlocking a channel requires your PIN.

## Audio System

---

<b>SIRIUS</b>	
Set category	Select to view channel categories (pop, rock, news, etc). If you select a category, seek and scan functions will only stop on channels in that category.
Alerts	Select to enable/disable an alert for a song, artist or team. The system alerts you when the selection is playing on another channel. Save up to 20 alerts.
Unlock all stations	Use your PIN to unlock previously locked stations.
Skip no stations	Use to restore any channels you previously skipped.
Parental lock (PIN)	Select to create a PIN which allows you to lock or unlock channels. Your initial PIN is 1234.

<b>Audio Settings</b>	
SCV level	Automatically adjusts the volume to compensate for speed and wind noise. You can set the system between off and + 7.
Sound	Allows you to adjust sound settings such as treble, bass, middle, fade and balance.
Occupancy mode	Optimizes sound quality for the chosen seating position.
Set category	Select to view channel categories (pop, rock, news, etc). If you select a category, seek and scan functions will only stop on channels in that category.
RBDS/RDS	Select to view additional broadcast data, if available. This feature defaults to off. RBDS/RDS must be on for you to set a category.

<b>CD</b>	
Scan all	Select to scan all disc selections.
Scan folder	Select to scan all music in the current MP3 folder.
CD compression	Select to bring soft and loud passages together for a more consistent listening level.



# Audio System

Display Settings	
Dimming	Select to change display brightness.
Language	Select to display the language in English, French or Spanish.
Temp setting	Select to display the outside temperature in Fahrenheit or Celsius.

Clock Settings	
Set time	Select to set the time.
Set date	Select to set the calendar date.
12/24 hour	Select to view clock time in a 12-hour mode or 24-hour mode.

## AUXILIARY INPUT JACK

### WARNINGS



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.



For safety reasons, do not connect or adjust the settings on your portable music player while the vehicle is moving.

### WARNINGS



Store the portable music player in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when the vehicle is in motion. Hard objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while the vehicle is in motion.



E142603

## Audio System

The auxiliary input jack (AIJ) allows you to connect and play music from your portable music player through the vehicle speakers. You can use any portable music player designed for use with headphones. Your audio extension cable must have male one-eighth inch (three and one-half millimeter) connectors at each end.

1. Make sure the vehicle, radio and portable music player are turned off and the transmission is in position **P**.
2. Plug the extension cable from the portable music player into the AIJ.
3. Turn on the radio. Select either a tuned FM station or a CD.
4. Adjust the volume as desired.
5. Turn on your portable music player and adjust its volume to half its maximum level.
6. Press **AUX** until **LINE** or **LINE IN** appears in the display. You should hear music from your device even if it is low.
7. Adjust the volume on your portable music player until it reaches the volume level of the FM station or CD. Do this by switching back and forth between the AUX and FM or CD controls.

### USB PORT (IF EQUIPPED)

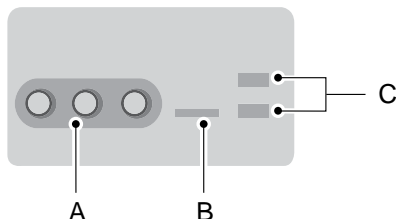


E142604

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported). See **SYNC®** (page 279).

### MEDIA HUB (IF EQUIPPED)

The media hub is located in the center console and has the following features:



E142605

- A A/V inputs
- B SD card slot
- C USB ports

See **MyFord Touch®** (page 315).

### SATELLITE RADIO (IF EQUIPPED)

SIRIUS® broadcasts a variety of music, news, sports, weather, traffic and entertainment satellite radio channels. For more information and a complete list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, visit [www.siriusxm.com](http://www.siriusxm.com) in the United States, [www.siriuscanada.ca](http://www.siriuscanada.ca) in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

# Audio System

## Satellite Radio Reception Factors

Potential Satellite Radio Reception Issues	
Antenna obstructions	For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and the audio system may mute.
Satellite radio signal interference	Your display may show ACQUIRING...to indicate the interference and the audio system may mute.

### SIRIUS® Satellite Radio Service

**Note:** SIRIUS reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.



E142593

SIRIUS satellite radio is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts a variety of music, sports, news, weather, traffic and entertainment programming. Your factory-installed SIRIUS satellite radio system includes hardware and a limited subscription term which begins on the date of sale or lease of the vehicle. Refer to your authorized dealer for availability.

For more information on extended subscription terms (a service fee is required), the online media player and a complete list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, and other features, please visit [www.siriusxm.com](http://www.siriusxm.com) in the United States, [www.sirius.ca](http://www.sirius.ca) in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

### Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN)

You need your ESN to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. When in satellite radio mode, you can view this number by pressing SIRIUS and memory preset 1 at the same time.

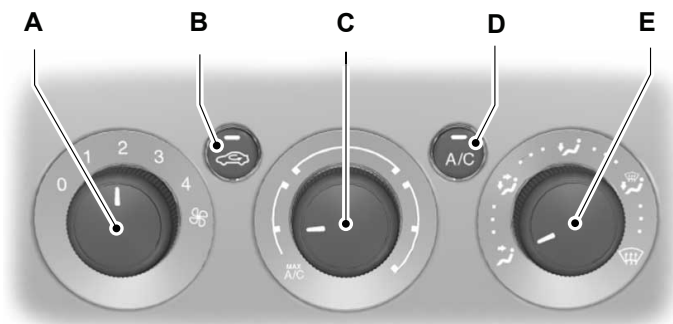
## Audio System

### Troubleshooting

Radio Display	Condition	Possible Action
Acquiring	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
Sat Fault/SIRIUS system failure	Internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear shortly, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See your authorized dealer for service.
Invalid Channel	Channel is no longer available.	Tune to another channel or choose another preset.
Unsubscribed Channel	Subscription not available for this channel.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel, or tune to another channel.
No Signal	Loss of signal from the SIRIUS satellite or SIRIUS tower to the vehicle antenna.	The signal is currently being blocked. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
Updating	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.
Call SIRIUS 1-888-539-7474	Satellite service has been deactivated by SIRIUS Satellite Radio.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to reactivate or resolve subscription issues.
No Channels Available	All the channels in the selected category are skipped or locked.	Using the channel guide, unlock or unskip the channels.
Subscription Updated	SIRIUS has updated the channels available for your vehicle.	No action required.

# Climate Control

## MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL



E141421

- A **Fan speed control:** Controls the volume of air circulated in your vehicle. Adjust to select the desired fan speed or switch off. If you switch the fan off, the windshield may fog up.
- B **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. When you select recirculated air, the button illuminates and the air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.
- C **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle. Adjust to select the desired temperature. If you select MAX A/C, the system distributes recirculated air through the instrument panel air vents. This mode is more economical and efficient than normal air conditioning. When the temperature control is in the MAX A/C position, neither the air conditioning or recirculated air can be turned off.
- D **Air conditioning:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve air conditioning when starting your vehicle, drive with the windows slightly open for two to three minutes.
- E **Air distribution control:** Adjust to select the desired air distribution.



Select to distribute air through the instrument panel air vents.



Select to distribute air through the footwell air vents.



Select to distribute air through the instrument panel and footwell air vents.



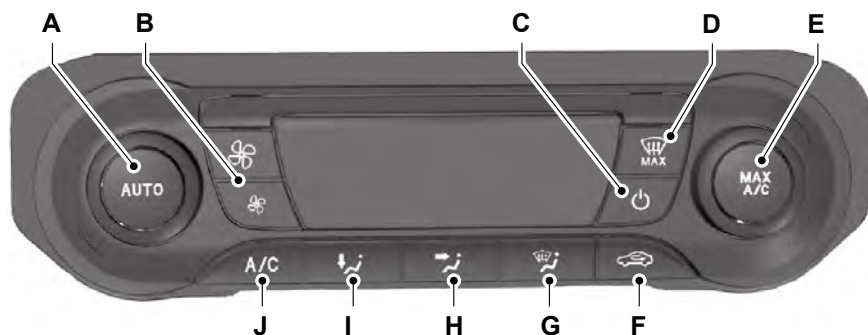
Select to distribute air through the windshield and footwell air vents.

## Climate Control



Select to distribute air through the windshield air vents. You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. You can also increase the temperature and fan speed to improve clearing.

### AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



E141422

- A AUTO:** Press the button to select automatic operation. The system automatically controls the temperature, amount and distribution of the airflow to reach and maintain your previously selected temperature.
- B Fan speed:** Controls the volume of air circulated in your vehicle. Press the buttons to select the desired fan speed. The setting is shown in the display.
- C On and off button:** Press the button to switch the system on and off.
- D MAX Defrost:** Press the button to distribute outside air through the windshield air vents. Air conditioning is automatically selected. The fan is set to the highest speed and the temperature to HI. When the air distribution is set in this position, you are unable to select recirculated air or manually adjust the fan speed and temperature control. Press the AUTO button to return to auto mode.
- E MAX A/C:** Press the button to distribute maximum air conditioning through the instrument panel air vents. This mode is more economical and efficient than normal air conditioning.
- F Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

# Climate Control

- G **Defrost:** Press the button to distribute air through the windshield air vents. You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.
- H **Instrument panel:** Press the button to distribute air through the instrument panel air vents.
- I **Footwell:** Press the button to distribute air through the footwell air vents.
- J **Air conditioning:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve air conditioning when starting your vehicle, drive with the windows slightly open for two to three minutes.

## Temperature Control



E133115

You can set the temperature between 60°F (15.5°C) and 85°F (29.5°C) in steps of 1°F (0.5°C). In position LO, 59°F (15°C), the system switches to permanent cooling. In position HI, 86°F (30°C), the system switches to permanent heating.

**Note:** If you select either position LO or HI, the system does not regulate a stable temperature.

### Mono Mode

In this mode, the temperature settings for both the driver's side and passenger's side are linked. If you adjust the setting using the rotary control on the driver's side, the system adjusts the temperature to the same setting on the passenger's side.

## Switching Mono Mode Off

Select a temperature for the passenger's side using the rotary control on the passenger's side. Mono mode automatically switches off. The temperature on the driver's side remains unchanged. You can now adjust the driver's side and passenger's side temperatures independently. The temperature settings for each side are shown in the display.

## Switching Mono Mode Back On

Press and hold the AUTO button. The passenger's side temperature is adjusted to the driver's side temperature setting.

## HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

### General Hints

**Note:** Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

**Note:** A small amount of air may be felt from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

**Note:** To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

# Climate Control

---

**Note:** Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

**Note:** Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

## Manual Climate Control

**Note:** To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather, adjust the air distribution control to the windshield air vents position. Increase the temperature and fan speed to improve clearing, if required.

## Automatic Climate Control

**Note:** Do not adjust the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold. The system automatically adjusts to the previously stored settings. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

**Note:** At low ambient temperatures with AUTO selected, the air stream is directed toward the windshield and side windows for as long as the engine remains cold.

**Note:** When the system is switched off, outside air is prevented from entering your vehicle.

**Note:** When the system is in AUTO mode, and the interior and exterior temperatures are high, the system automatically selects recirculated air to maximize cooling of the interior. When the selected air temperature is reached, the system automatically selects outside air.

**Note:** When you select windshield defrosting and defogging, the instrument panel and footwell level functions automatically switch off and air conditioning switches on. Outside air flows into your vehicle.

## Heating the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle With Manual Climate Control	Vehicle With Automatic Climate Control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.	Press the high fan speed button control.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.	Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell air vents position.	Press the footwell button to distribute air to the footwell air vents.



# Climate Control

## Recommended Settings for Heating

	Vehicle With Manual Climate Control	Vehicle With Automatic Climate Control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.	Press the slow fan speed button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell and windshield air vents position.	Press the footwell and windshield air distribution buttons.
4		Close the instrument panel air vents. Open the side air vents and direct them toward the side windows.

## Cooling the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle With Manual Climate Control	Vehicle With Automatic Climate Control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.	Press the AUTO button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the MAX A/C position.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.	

## Recommended Settings for Cooling

	Vehicle With Manual Climate Control	Vehicle With Automatic Climate Control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.	Press the slow fan speed button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.	Press the instrument panel vent button to distribute air to the instrument panel air vents.

## Climate Control

---

### Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods During Extreme High Ambient Temperatures

	Vehicle With Manual Climate Control	Vehicle With Automatic Climate Control
1	Apply the parking brake.	Apply the parking brake.
2	Move the transmission selector lever to position P.	Move the transmission selector lever to position P.
3	Adjust the temperature control to the MAX A/C position.	Press the MAX A/C button.
4	Adjust the fan speed to the lowest speed setting.	

### Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather

	Vehicle With Manual Climate Control	Vehicle With Automatic Climate Control
1	Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel and footwell air vents positions.	Press the windshield defrosting and defogging button.
2	Press the A/C button.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.	
4	Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting.	
5	Direct the instrument panel side air vents toward the side windows.	
6	Close the instrument panel vents.	

# Climate Control

---

## Maximum Cooling Performance in Instrument Panel or Instrument Panel and Footwell Positions

1. Adjust the temperature control to the lowest setting.
2. Press the A/C and recirculated air buttons.
3. Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting initially and then adjust it to suit the desired comfort level.

## HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

### Heated Rear Window

**Note:** The ignition must be switched on to use this feature.

Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. Press the button again within 10 minutes to switch it off. It switches off automatically after 10 minutes, or when you switch the ignition off.

**Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals from the inside of the rear window. This may cause damage to the heated grid lines and will not be covered by your warranty.**

### Heated Exterior Mirror (If Equipped)

**Note:** Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or attempt to readjust the mirror glass if it is frozen in place. These actions could cause damage to the glass and mirrors.

**Note:** Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

Both mirrors are heated to remove ice, mist and fog when the heated rear window is switched on.

## CABIN AIR FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a cabin air filter. It is located just in front of the windshield under the cowl panel grille on the passenger's side of your vehicle.

The particulate filtration system is designed to reduce the concentration of airborne particles such as dust, spores and pollen in the air being supplied to the interior of your vehicle.

**Note:** A cabin air filter must be installed at all times to prevent foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.

The particulate filtration system gives you and your passengers the following benefits:

- It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- It improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

The filter should be replaced at regular intervals. See the **Scheduled Maintenance** chapter.

For additional cabin air filter information, or to replace the filter, see an authorized dealer.

## REMOTE START (IF EQUIPPED)

The climate control system adjusts the cabin temperature during remote start.

# Climate Control

---

You cannot adjust the system during remote start operation. Turn the ignition on to return the system to its previous settings. You can now make adjustments. You will need to turn certain vehicle-dependent features back on, such as:

- heated seats
- cooled seats
- heated steering wheel
- heated mirrors
- heated rear window.

You can adjust the settings using the information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 84).

## Automatic Settings

You can set the climate control to operate in AUTO mode through the information display setting: Remote Start > Climate Control > Heater-A/C > Auto. The climate control system automatically sets the interior temperature to 72°F (22°C).

In hot weather, the system is set to 72°F (22°C). Cooled seats are set to high (if available, and selected to AUTO in the information display).

In moderate weather, the system either heats or cools (based on previous settings). The rear defroster, heated mirrors and heated/cooled seats are not automatically turned on.

In cold weather, the system is set to 72°F (22°C). The heated seats and heated steering wheel are set to high (if available, and selected to AUTO in the information display). The rear defroster and heated mirrors are automatically turned on.

## Last Settings

You can set the climate control to operate using the last climate control settings through the information display setting: Remote Start > Climate Control > Heater-A/C > Last Settings. The climate control system automatically uses the settings last selected before the vehicle was turned off.

## Heated and Cooled Devices

The climate control system controls other heated and cooled devices inside the vehicle. These devices (if available, and selected to AUTO in the information displays) may also be switched on during remote start. Heated devices are typically switched on during cold weather, and cooled devices during hot weather.

# Seats

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

### WARNINGS



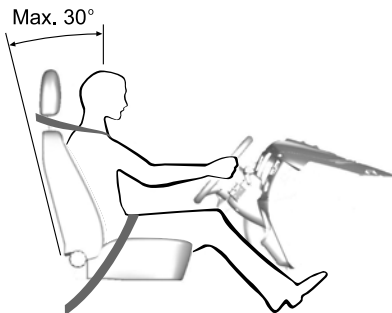
Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a collision. Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.



Do not recline the seatback as this can cause the occupant to slide under the safety belt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a collision.



Do not place objects higher than the seatback to reduce the risk of serious injury in the event of a collision or during heavy braking.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, safety belt and air bags will provide optimum protection in the event of a collision.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seatback more than 30 degrees.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 inches (25 centimeters) between your breastbone and the air bag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

## HEAD RESTRAINTS

### WARNINGS



Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied.

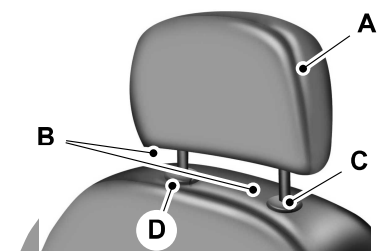
# Seats

## WARNINGS



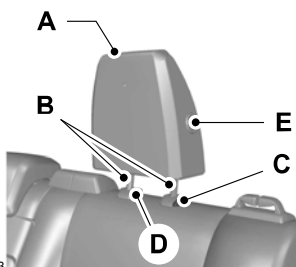
Install the head restraint properly to help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.

### Front seat head restraint



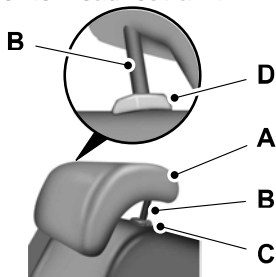
E138642

### Rear seat outboard head restraints



E138643

### Rear center head restraint



E138645

The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint
- B Two steel stems
- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button
- E Fold button

**Note:** Adjust the seatback to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.

## Adjusting the Head Restraint

### Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

### Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

### Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons C and D.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

### Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until in locks.

### Folding the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button E.
2. Pull it back up to reset.

# Seats

## Tilting Head Restraints (If Equipped)

The front head restraints may have a tilting feature for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:



1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivoting it forward again will then release it to the rearward, un-tilted position.

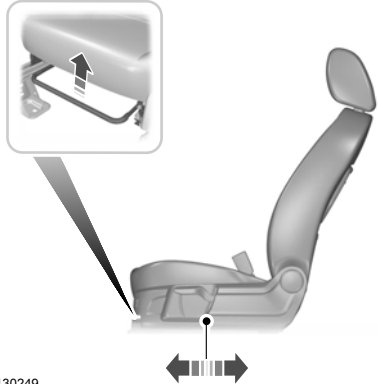
## MANUAL SEATS

### WARNING



Do not adjust the driver's seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving.

## Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

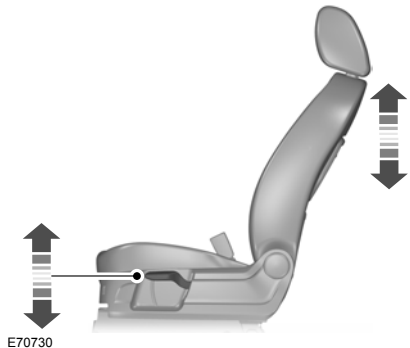


### WARNING



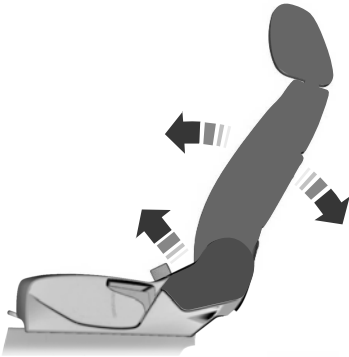
Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged.

## Adjusting the Height of the Driver's Seat



# Seats

## Recline Adjustment



### WARNING



Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seatback to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seatback to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a collision.

## POWER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

### WARNINGS



Do not adjust the driver's seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving.

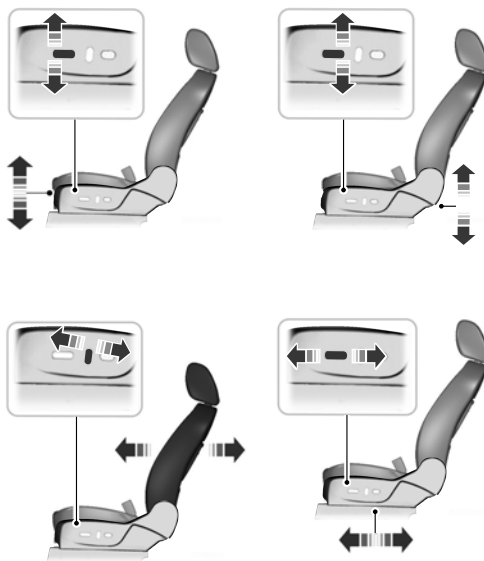


Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

E138646



## Seats



E138647


### Power Lumbar (If Equipped)




E138648

### MEMORY FUNCTION (IF EQUIPPED)

#### WARNINGS

 Before activating the seat memory, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.

 Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

This feature will automatically recall the position of the driver's seat and power mirrors. The memory control is located on the driver's door.

# Seats



E142554

## Saving a Pre-Set Position

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Adjust the seat and exterior mirrors to your desired position.
3. Press and hold the desired pre-set button until you hear a single chime.

## Recalling a Pre-Set Position

Press the pre-set button associated with your desired driving position. The seat and mirrors will move to the position stored for that pre-set.

## Saving a Passive Setting

The vehicle stores the seating and mirror positions for up to three remote controls or passive keys. Next time the vehicle is unlocked, the position of the seat and mirrors will adjust to the last used position.

Each time you turn the ignition off, the current seat and mirror settings are stored on the remote control or passive key used.

## Recalling a Stored Seat Position

**Note:** Press any driver seat adjustment control, any of the memory buttons or any mirror control switch, to stop seat movement during a recall. Seat movement will also stop if you move the vehicle.

## Passive Recall

**Note:** If more than one passive key is in range, the memory function will move to the settings of the first key stored.

When you unlock the vehicle with the remote control or pull the driver door handle with a passive key in range, the seat and mirrors will move to the position stored on that remote control or passive key.

## REAR SEATS



E138650

## Recline Adjustment (If Equipped)

With the seat occupied, pull the lever up to recline the seatback.

## Folding the Seatback

With the seat empty, pull the lever up to fold the seatback forward. You may need to fold the outboard head restraints and lower the center head restraint first.

## Unfolding the Seatback

Pull the lever up and pull the seatback upward.

# Seats

## HEATED SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

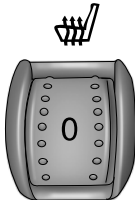
### WARNING



People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This may damage the heating element which may cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so could drain your vehicle battery.



E138653

Adjust the control to the desired heat setting.

## REAR SEAT ARMREST (IF EQUIPPED)



E138656

Fold the armrest down to use the armrest and cupholder.

# Universal Garage Door Opener

## Homelink® Wireless Control System (If Equipped)

### WARNINGS



Make sure that the garage door and security device are free from obstruction when you are programming. Do not program the system with the vehicle in the garage.



Do not use the system with any garage door opener that does not have the safety stop and reverse feature as required by U.S. Federal Safety Standards (this includes any garage door opener manufactured before April 1, 1982).

**Note:** Make sure you keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future system programming.

**Note:** We recommend that upon the sale or lease termination of your vehicle, you erase the programmed function buttons for security reasons. See Erasing the function button codes later in this section.

**Note:** You can program a maximum of three devices. To change or replace any of the three devices after it has been initially programmed, you must first erase the current settings. See Erasing the function button codes later in this section.



E142657

The universal garage door opener replaces the common hand-held garage door opener with a three-button transmitter that is integrated into the driver's sun visor.

The system includes two primary features, a garage door opener and a platform for remote activation of devices within the home. As well as being programmed for garage doors, the system transmitter can be programmed to operate entry gate operators, security systems, entry door locks and home or office lighting.

Additional system information can be found online at [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) or by calling the toll-free help line on 1-800-355-3515.

### Programming

**Note:** Put a new battery in the hand-held transmitter. This will ensure quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.

**Note:** During programming, the hand-held transmitter may stop transmitting. If this occurs press and hold the function button on the visor while you press and release the hand-held transmitter every two seconds. The indicator light will flash slowly and then rapidly once the radio frequency signal is accepted.



E142658

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Hold the garage door hand-held transmitter 1–3 inches (2–8 centimeter) away from the button you want to program.

# Universal Garage Door Opener

3. Press and hold both the button on the visor you want to program and the hand-held transmitter button until the indicator light on the visor changes from flashing slowly to rapidly, then release.
4. Press and hold the function button you programmed for 5 seconds, then release. You may need to do this twice to activate the door. If your garage door does not operate, observe the indicator light.

If the indicator light stays on, programming is complete. Press and release the programmed button to activate the door.

If the indicator light on the visor flashes rapidly for two seconds then turns to a constant light, follow the steps below.

**Note:** You may need a ladder to reach the unit and you may need to remove the cover or lamp lens.



E142659

1. Press the learn button on the garage door opener motor.

**Note:** You will have 30 seconds to complete the next step.

2. Return to your vehicle.



E142658

3. Press and hold the function button you want to program on the visor for 2 seconds, then release. Repeat this step. Depending on the brand of garage door opener you may need to repeat this sequence a third time.

To program additional buttons repeat steps one through four.

For questions or comments, please contact HomeLink at [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) or 1-800-355-3515.

## Erasing the Function Button Codes

**Note:** You cannot erase individual buttons.



E142660

1. Press and hold the outer two function buttons simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the indicator lights above the buttons flash rapidly.
2. When the indicator lights flash, release the buttons. The codes for all buttons are erased.

## Reprogramming a Single Button

To program a device to a previously trained button, follow these steps:

1. Press and hold the desired button. Do NOT release the button.
2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the button, follow Step 1 in the Programming section.

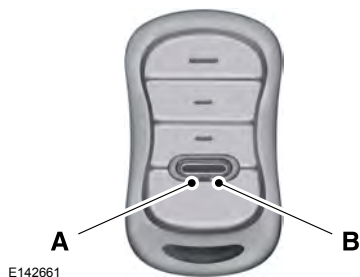
# Universal Garage Door Opener

For questions or comments, contact HomeLink at [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) or 1-800-355-3515.

## Programming to a Genie Intellicode® 2 Garage Door Opener

**Note:** The Genie Intellicode 2 transmitter must already be programmed to operate with the garage door opener.

**Note:** To program HomeLink to the transmitter you must first put the transmitter into programming mode.



- A. Red indicator light
- B. Green indicator light

1. Press and hold one of the buttons on the hand-held transmitter for 10 seconds. The indicator light will change from green to red and green.
2. Press the same button twice to confirm the change to programming mode. If done properly the indicator light will appear red.
3. Hold the transmitter within 1–3 inches (2–8 centimeter) of the button on the visor you want to program.
4. Press and hold both the programmed Genie button on the hand-held transmitter and the button you want to program. The indicator light on the visor will flash rapidly when the programming is successful.

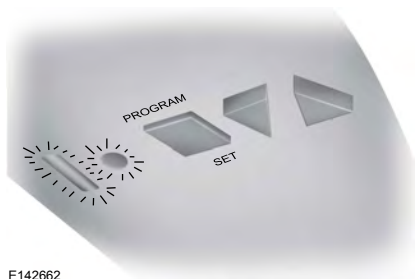
**Note:** The Genie transmitter will transmit for up to 30 seconds. If HomeLink does not program within 30 seconds the Genie transmitter will need to be pressed again. If the Genie transmitter indicator light displays green and red, release the button until the indicator light turns off before pressing the button again.

Once HomeLink has been programmed successfully, the Genie transmitter must be changed out of program mode. To do this:

1. Press and hold the previously programmed Genie button on the hand-held transmitter for 10 seconds. The indicator light will change from red to red and green.
2. Press the same button twice to confirm the change. If done correctly the indicator light will turn green.

## Programming HomeLink to the Genie Intellicode Garage Door Opener Motor

**Note:** You may need a ladder to access the garage door opener motor.



1. Press and hold the program button on the Garage door opener motor until both blue indicator lights turn on.
2. Release the program button. Only the smaller round indicator light should be on.

# Universal Garage Door Opener

---

3. Press and release the program button.  
The larger purple indicator light will flash.

**Note:** *The next two steps must be completed in 30 seconds.*

4. Press and release the Genie Intellicode 2 hand-held transmitter's previously programmed button. Both indicator lights on the garage door opener motor unit should now flash purple.
5. Press and hold the previously programmed button on the visor for 2 seconds. Repeat this step up to 3 times until the garage door moves.

Programming is now complete.

## Clearing a HomeLink Device

To erase programming from the three HomeLink buttons press and hold the two outer HomeLink buttons until the indicator light begins to flash. The indicator light will begin flashing in 10 to 20 seconds, at which time both buttons should be released. Programming has now been erased, and the indicator light should blink slowly to indicate the device is in train mode when any of the three HomeLink buttons are pressed.

## FCC and RSS-210 Industry Canada Compliance

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications to your device not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance can void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## Auxiliary Power Points

### WARNING



Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket (if equipped). Improper use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This will damage the outlet and blow the fuse.

**Note:** Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug.

**Note:** Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.

**Note:** Do not use the power point for operating a cigar lighter element.

**Note:** Improper use of the power point can cause damage not covered by your warranty.

**Note:** Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.

Run the engine for full capacity use of the power point. To prevent the battery from being discharged:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when the vehicle is parked for extended periods.

### Locations

Power points may be found:

- on the center console
- inside the center console storage bin
- on the rear of the center console.

### 110 Volt AC Power Point (If Equipped)

#### WARNING



Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 110 volt AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design provided by the cap and twist tab. Doing so may cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** The power point will turn off after 13 minutes if the ignition is on without the engine running. Keep the engine running or cycle the ignition to keep the power point on.



E143941

The power point is used for powering electrical devices that require up to 150 watts. It is located on the rear of the center console.

When the green indicator light, located on the power point, is:

- on — power point is ready to supply power.
- off — power point power supply is off; ignition is not on.
- blinking — power point is in fault mode.



## Auxiliary Power Points

---

The power point temporarily turns off power if the 150 watt limit is exceeded. It can also switch to a fault mode when it is overloaded, overheated, or shorted. Unplug your device and turn the ignition off then on for overloading and shorting conditions. Let the system cool off, then turn the ignition off then on for an overheating condition.

The power point is not designed for electric devices such as:

- Cathode ray tube type televisions
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools, compressor-driven refrigerators, etc.
- Measuring devices, which process precise data, such as medical equipment, measuring equipment, etc.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply: microcomputer-controlled electric blankets, touch sensor lamps, etc.

## Storage Compartments

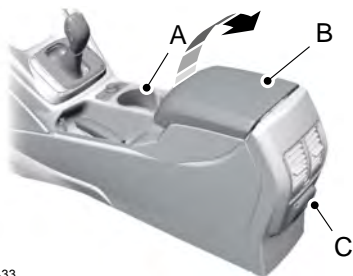
### CENTER CONSOLE

#### WARNING



Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard objects can injure you in a collision.

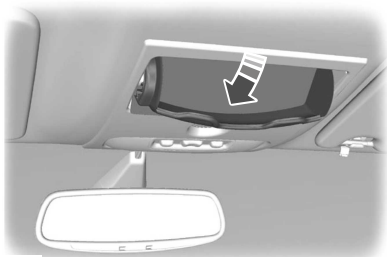
Your vehicle may be equipped with a variety of features.



E142433

- A Cupholder
- B Storage compartment with auxiliary power point, auxiliary input jack, USB port and media hub
- C Auxiliary power point

### OVERHEAD CONSOLE



E75193


Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.


# Starting and Stopping the Engine


## GENERAL INFORMATION


If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 miles (8 kilometers) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

### WARNINGS

 Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

 Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

 Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.

 If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes.

This system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

## IGNITION SWITCH



E72128

0 (off) - The ignition is off.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition off and leave your vehicle, do not leave your key in the ignition. This could discharge your vehicle battery.

**Note:** To switch the engine off when your vehicle is moving, move the transmission selector lever to position N. Use the brakes to bring the vehicle to a safe stop. After your vehicle has stopped, switch the engine off and move the transmission selector lever to position P. Turn the key to position 0 or I.

I (accessory) - Allows the electrical accessories such as the radio to operate while the engine is not running.


**Note:** Do not leave the ignition key in this position for too long to avoid discharging the battery.

II (on) - All electrical circuits operational. Warning lamps and indicators are illuminated.

III (start) - cranks the engine. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

## KEYLESS STARTING (IF EQUIPPED)

### WARNINGS

 The keyless starting system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as mobile phones.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

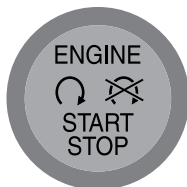
## WARNINGS



Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle.

**Note:** A valid key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

## Switching the Ignition On (Accessory Mode)



E142555

Press the START button once without your foot on the brake pedal. The button is located on the instrument panel near the steering wheel. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Press the START button again without your foot on the brake pedal to turn the vehicle off completely.

## Starting Your Vehicle

Carry out the following steps to start your vehicle:

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position P.
2. Fully press the brake pedal.
3. Press the START button.

The system does not function if:

- The key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start your vehicle, do the following.

## 5-button remote



E142874

## 3-button remote



E145988

1. Hold the key next to the symbol on the steering column.
2. With the key in this position, you can use the start button to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position P.
2. Press the START button.

**Note:** The ignition, all electrical circuits warning lamps and indicators will be switched off.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

1. Press and hold the START button for a moment, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Move the transmission selector lever to position N and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. When your vehicle has stopped, move the transmission selector lever to position P and switch the ignition off.

### WARNING



Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators may also be off.

## Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 20 seconds of switching it off, even if a valid key is not present.

Within 20 seconds of switching your vehicle off, press the brake pedal and press the start button. After 20 seconds have expired, you can no longer start your vehicle without the key present inside the vehicle.

Once your vehicle has started, it remains running until you press the start button, even if a valid key has not been detected. If you open and close a door while your vehicle is running, the system searches for a valid key. You cannot start your vehicle if a valid key is not detected within 20 seconds.

## STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

When you start the engine the idle speed will be increased to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer.

Before starting the engine check the following:

- Make sure all occupants have fastened their safety belts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Move the transmission selector lever to position P.
- Turn the ignition key to position II.

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position P or N.
2. Fully press the brake pedal.
3. Start the engine. The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

**Note:** *If you cannot start the engine on the first try, wait for a short period of time and try again.*

If you have difficulty starting the engine when the temperature is below -13°F (-25°C), press the accelerator pedal slightly and try again.

If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow this procedure.

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position P.
2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Fully press the brake pedal.
4. Start the engine.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

## Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes

### WARNING



If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes. Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

## Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods of time, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 1 inch (2.5 centimeters)
- Set your climate control to outside air.

## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (IF EQUIPPED)

### WARNINGS



Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.



Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

**Note:** The heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0°F (-18°C).

The heater acts as a starting aid by warming the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element (installed in the engine block) and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 120 volt AC electrical source.

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use a 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). This extension cord must be able to be used outdoors, in cold temperatures, and be clearly marked Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Make sure the vehicle is parked in a clean area, clear of combustibles.
- Make sure the heater, heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.

## Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

- Make sure the system is unplugged and properly stowed before driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure the heater system is checked for proper operation before winter.

### Using the Engine Block Heater

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It will achieve maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. If you use the heater longer than three hours, this will not improve system performance and will use unnecessary electricity.

# Fuel and Refueling

---

## SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

### WARNINGS



Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door (Easy Fuel no cap fuel system), do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



The flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity, which can cause a fire if fuel is pumped into an ungrounded fuel container.



Fuel ethanol and gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Care should be taken to avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking "Antabuse" or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.



# Fuel and Refueling

## FUEL QUALITY

**Note:** *We recommend that you use only high quality fuel without additives or other engine treatments.*

Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds (e.g. manganese-based). They could damage the emission system.

### Choosing the Right Fuel

**Note:** *Use of any fuel other than those recommended may cause powertrain damage, a loss of vehicle performance and repairs may not be covered under warranty.*

If your vehicle is not a flexible fuel vehicle, then only use unleaded fuel or unleaded fuel blended with a maximum of 15% ethanol. Do not use fuel ethanol (E85), diesel fuel, fuel methanol, leaded fuel or any other fuel because it could damage or impair the emission control system.

The use of leaded fuel is prohibited by law.

Your vehicle was not designed to use fuel or fuel additives with metallic compounds, including manganese-based additives.

### Octane Recommendations

Regular unleaded gasoline with a pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87 is recommended. Some fuel stations offer fuels posted as regular with an octane rating below 87, particularly in high altitude areas. Fuels with octane levels below 87 are not recommended.

**Note:** *Premium fuel will provide improved performance for vehicles with EcoBoost® engines and is recommended for severe duty use such as trailer tow.*

Do not be concerned if your engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if it knocks heavily while you are using fuel with the recommended octane rating, see your authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Avoid running out of fuel because this situation may have an adverse effect on powertrain components.

If you have run out of fuel:

- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal. With keyless ignition, just start the engine. Crank time will be longer than usual.
- Normally, adding 1 gallon (3.8 liters) of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If the vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep grade, more than 1 gallon (3.8 liters) may be required.
- The service engine soon indicator may come on. For more information on the service engine soon indicator, See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 80).

## Refilling With a Portable Fuel Container


### WARNINGS



Do not insert the nozzle of portable fuel containers or aftermarket funnels into the capless fuel system. This could damage the fuel system and its seal, and may cause fuel to run onto the ground instead of filling the tank, which could result in serious personal injury.

# Fuel and Refueling

## WARNINGS

 Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

**Note:** Do not use aftermarket funnels; they will not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it. The included funnel has been specially designed to work safely with your vehicle.

When filling the vehicle's fuel tank from a portable fuel container, use the funnel included with the vehicle.



E142668

1. Locate the white plastic funnel in the spare tire compartment.
2. Slowly insert the funnel into the capless fuel system.
3. Fill the vehicle with fuel from the portable fuel container.
4. When done, clean the funnel or properly dispose of it. Extra funnels can be purchased from your authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

## REFUELING

### WARNINGS

-  Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.
-  Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.
-  Turn off your engine when you are refueling.
-  Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle.
-  Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel.
-  Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle. This is against the law in some places.
-  Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.
-  Do not use personal electronic devices while refueling.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Place approved fuel container on the ground.
- Do not fill a fuel container while it is in the vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- Do not use a device that would hold the fuel pump handle in the fill position.

# Fuel and Refueling

## Easy Fuel® No Cap Fuel System

### WARNING



The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

When fueling your vehicle:

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Open the fuel filler door.
3. Slowly insert the fuel filler nozzle fully into the fuel system, and leave the nozzle fully inserted until you are done pumping.
4. After you are done pumping fuel, slowly remove the fuel filler nozzle. Allow about ten seconds after pumping fuel before removing the fuel filler nozzle. This allows residual fuel to drain back into the fuel tank and not spill onto the vehicle.

**Note:** A fuel spillage concern may occur if overfilling the fuel tank. Do not overfill the tank to the point that the fuel is able to bypass the fuel filler nozzle. The overfilled fuel may run down the drain located below and in front of the fuel filler door.

If the fuel fill inlet was not properly closed, a Check fuel fill inlet message may appear on the instrument cluster. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 80).

At the next opportunity, do the following:

1. Safely pull off the road.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Open the fuel filler door and remove any visible debris from the fuel fill opening.

4. Insert either the fuel fill nozzle or the fuel fill funnel provided with the vehicle several times to dislodge any debris and allow the inlet to close properly.

If this action corrects the problem, the message may not reset immediately. It may take several driving cycles for the message to turn off. A driving cycle consists of an engine start-up (after four or more hours with the engine off) followed by city or highway driving. Continuing to drive with the message on may cause the service engine soon lamp to turn on as well.

## EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

### WARNINGS



Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.



Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle is equipped with various emission control components and a catalytic converter which will enable your vehicle to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.

## Fuel and Refueling

- Do not turn off the ignition while your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in scheduled maintenance information are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized parts are used for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

Illumination of the service engine soon indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.

Please consult your Warranty Guide for complete emission warranty information.

### On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle is equipped with a computer that monitors the engine's emission control system. This system is commonly known as the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II). The OBD-II system protects the environment by ensuring that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists your authorized dealer in properly servicing your vehicle.



When the service engine soon indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon indicator to illuminate. Examples are:

1. The vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
3. The fuel fill inlet may not have been properly closed. See **Refueling** (page 142).
4. Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

These temporary malfunctions can be corrected by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly closing the fuel fill inlet or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon indicator should stay off the next time the engine is started. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city/highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

# Fuel and Refueling

---

If the service engine soon indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness, and lead to more costly repairs.

## Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) Testing

Some state/provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.



If the service engine soon indicator is on or the bulb does not work, the vehicle may need to be serviced. See On-Board Diagnostics.

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is considered not ready for I/M testing.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon indicator stays on solid, it means that the vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system is designed to check the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days. If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving may be performed:

15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway/highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods

Allow the vehicle to sit for at least eight hours without starting the engine. Then, start the engine and complete the above driving cycle. The engine must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the engine until the above driving cycle is complete. If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, the above driving cycle will have to be repeated.

## FUEL CONSUMPTION

**Note:** *The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity of the fuel tank due to the empty reserve still present in the tank.*

# Fuel and Refueling

---

The advertised capacity is the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in a full tank and a tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the amount of fuel in the tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

## Filling the Tank

For consistent results when filling the fuel tank:

- Turn the ignition off before fueling; an inaccurate reading results if the engine is left running.
- Use the same fill rate (low-medium-high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than two automatic click-offs when filling.

Results are most accurate when the filling method is consistent.

## Calculating Fuel Economy

Do not measure fuel economy during the first 1000 miles (1600 km) of driving (this is your engine's break-in period); a more accurate measurement is obtained after 2000 miles - 3000 miles (3200 km - 4800 km). Also, fuel expense, frequency of fill ups or fuel gauge readings are not accurate ways to measure fuel economy.

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading.
2. Each time you fill the tank, record the amount of fuel added.
3. After at least three to five tank fill ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.

5. Calculate fuel economy by dividing miles traveled by gallons used (For Metric: Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by kilometers traveled).

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This provides an accurate estimate of the vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, lower temperatures mean lower fuel economy.

# Transmission

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

### WARNINGS



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.



Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than three seconds will limit engine rpm, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

### Understanding the Positions of Your Automatic Transmission

#### Putting your vehicle in gear:

1. Fully press down the brake pedal.
2. Press and hold the button on the front of the gearshift lever.
3. Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear.
4. Release the button and your transmission will remain in the selected gear.



E133124

#### P (Park)

This position locks the transmission and prevents the front wheels from turning. Come to a complete stop before putting your vehicle into and out of P (Park)

#### R (Reverse)

With the gearshift lever in R (Reverse), the vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of R (Reverse).

#### N (Neutral)

With the gearshift lever in N (Neutral), the vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

#### D (Drive)

The normal driving position for the best fuel economy. Transmission operates in gears one through six.

#### S (Sport)

Moving the gearshift lever to S (Sport):

- Provides additional grade (engine) braking and extends lower gear operation to enhance performance for uphill climbs, hilly terrain or mountainous areas. This will increase engine RPM during engine braking.
- Provides additional lower gear operation through the automatic transmission shift strategy.
- Gears are selected more quickly and at higher engine speeds.

# Transmission

## SelectShift Automatic® Transmission (If Equipped)

Your SelectShift automatic transmission gives you the ability to manually change gears if you'd like. To use SelectShift, move the gearshift lever into S (Sport). Now you can use the +/- buttons on the side of your gearshift lever to select gears.

When using the toggle for manual shifting:

- Press the (+) button to upshift.
- Press the (-) button to downshift.

**Note:** After you have assumed manual control with SelectShift your vehicle will remain in this mode until you return the gearshift lever from (S) Sport, back to (D) Drive.

Upshift to the recommended shift speeds according to the following chart:

Upshifts when accelerating (recommended for best fuel economy)	
Shift from:	
1 - 2	15 mph (24 km/h)
2 - 3	25 mph (40 km/h)
3 - 4	40 mph (64 km/h)
4 - 5	45 mph (72 km/h)
5 - 6	50 mph (80 km/h)

The instrument cluster will display the selected gear that you are currently in.

SelectShift will automatically make some shifts for you in the event that your engine speed is running at too high, or to low an RPM.

**Note:** Engine damage may occur if excessive engine revving is held without shifting.

## Brake-Shift Interlock

### WARNINGS



Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.



When doing this procedure, you will be taking the vehicle out of park which means the vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully set the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheel chocks if appropriate.



If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

Use the brake shift interlock lever to move the gearshift lever from the park position in the event of an electrical malfunction or if your vehicle has a dead battery.

Apply the parking brake and turn the ignition off before performing this procedure.

1. Insert a screwdriver (or similar tool) between the shifter bezel and the top finish panel.
2. Use the tool to unsnap the shifter bezel from the finish panel.



E142627



# Transmission

3. Locate the white lever located on the left side of the shifter.
4. Using the tool move the white lever towards the rear of the shifter.
5. While holding the white lever in the rear position, move the shifter from the park position.
6. Press the shifter bezel back into the top finish panel until it snaps back into position.
7. Apply the brake pedal, start the vehicle and release the parking brake.

**Note:** See your authorized dealer as soon as possible if this procedure is used.

## If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

**Note:** Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.

**Note:** Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

## HILL START ASSIST

### WARNINGS



The hill start assist feature does not replace the parking brake. When you leave the vehicle, always apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into P (Park).



You must remain in the vehicle once you have activated the hill start assist feature.

### WARNINGS



During all times, you are responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the hill start assist system and intervening, if required.



If the engine is revved excessively, or if a malfunction is detected when the hill start assist feature is active, the hill start assist feature will be deactivated.

This feature makes it easier to pull away when the vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When this feature is active, the vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes are released automatically once the engine has developed sufficient drive to prevent the vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, (for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space).

This feature is activated automatically on any slope that can result in significant vehicle rollback. This feature will not operate if the parking brake is activated.

## Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed.
2. If the sensors detect that the vehicle is on a slope, the hill start assist feature will be activated automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, the vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for approximately two or three seconds. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.

## **Transmission**

---

4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes will be released automatically.

## Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

### USING FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE

**Note:** The 4WD temporarily disabled message will be displayed if the 4WD system has overheated and defaulted to front-wheel drive. This condition may occur if the vehicle is operated in extreme high load conditions or with excessive wheel slip, such as deep sand. To resume normal 4WD function as soon as possible, stop the vehicle in a safe location and turn off the engine. The 4WD restored message will be displayed for approximately five seconds after the system cools and normal 4WD function returns.

**Note:** The Intelligent 4WD system gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities. Operating your vehicle in conditions other than moderate sand, snow, mud or rough roads could subject it to excessive stress which might result in damage. This damage is not covered under your warranty.

**Note:** When a 4WD system fault is present, the warning 4WD malfunction Service required will display in the information display. The 4WD system is not functioning correctly and defaulted to front-wheel drive. When this warning is displayed, have your vehicle serviced at an authorized dealer.



E142669

You will be able to see the power distribution between the front and rear wheels represented by an icon in your information display. More power to either front or rear wheels will be displayed by more area filled in.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a full-time four-wheel drive (4WD) system. The 4WD system is a proactive system, meaning it not only responds to wheel slip between the front and rear wheels but also has the ability to anticipate wheel slip and transfer torque to the rear wheels before slip occurs. Even when no wheel slip is present, the Intelligent 4WD system is continuously making adjustments to the torque distribution, in an attempt to improve the vehicle's straight line and cornering behavior, both on and off road. The system is active all the time and requires no input from the operator.

All components of the Intelligent 4WD system are sealed for life and require no maintenance.

If your vehicle is equipped with Intelligent 4WD, a spare tire of a different size other than the tire provided should never be used. If the spare tire is installed, the 4WD system may disable automatically and enter front-wheel drive only mode to protect driveline components. This condition may be indicated by a 4WD Off message in the Information displays chapter. See Information displays in the Instrument Cluster chapter for more information. If there is a 4WD Off message in the information display from using the spare tire, this indicator should turn off after reinstalling the repaired or replaced normal road tire and driving a short distance. It is recommended to reinstall the repaired or replaced road tire as soon as possible. Major dissimilar tire sizes between the front and rear axles could cause the 4WD system to stop functioning and default to front-wheel drive or damage the 4WD system.

## Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

---

### Driving in Special Conditions With Four-Wheel Drive

4WD vehicles are equipped for driving on sand, snow, mud and rough roads and have operating characteristics that are somewhat different from conventional vehicles, both on and off the highway.

When driving at slow speeds off-highway under high outside temperatures, use a low gear when possible. Low gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.

Under severe operating conditions, the A/C may cycle on and off to protect overheating of the engine.

### Basic operating principles

- Drive slower in strong crosswinds which can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- Be extremely careful when driving on pavement made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice.

### If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement

- If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement, slow down, but avoid severe brake application, ease the vehicle back onto the pavement only after reducing your speed. Do not turn the steering wheel too sharply while returning to the road surface.
- It may be safer to stay on the apron or shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the pavement. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.
- It often may be less risky to strike small objects, such as highway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the pavement which could cause the vehicle to slide sideways out of control or rollover. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.

### Emergency maneuvers

- In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid “over-driving” your vehicle (for example; turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency). Excessive steering will result in less vehicle control, not more. Additionally, smooth variations of the accelerator and/or brake pedal pressure should be utilized if changes in vehicle speed are called

## Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

for. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration or braking which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and/or personal injury. Use all available road surface to return the vehicle to a safe direction of travel.

- In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.
- If the vehicle goes from one type of surface to another (i.e., from concrete to gravel) there will be a change in the way the vehicle responds to a maneuver (steering, acceleration or braking). Again, avoid these abrupt inputs.

### Sand

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Avoid reducing the tire pressures but shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning the wheels.

Do not drive your 4WD vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This will cause the 4WD system to overheat. The instrument cluster will display the message 4WD temporarily disabled. To resume normal 4WD operation, turn off the vehicle and allow the 4WD system to cool down for a minimum of 15 minutes. After the system has cooled down, normal 4WD function will return and the instrument cluster will briefly display 4WD restored. When driving at slow speeds in deep sand under high outside temperatures, use a low gear when possible. Low gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.

Avoid excessive speed because vehicle momentum can work against you and cause the vehicle to become stuck to the point that assistance may be required from another vehicle. Remember, you may be able to back out the way you came if you proceed with caution.

### Mud and water

If you must drive through high water, drive slowly. Traction or brake capability may be limited.

When driving through water, determine the depth; avoid water higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks) (if possible) and proceed slowly. If the ignition system gets wet, the vehicle may stall.



E142667

Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying can be improved by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even 4WD vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. If the vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

## Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating driveshafts causes an imbalance that could damage drive components.

**Note:** *Driving through deep water may damage the transmission. If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, the axle lubricant and power transfer unit lubricant should be checked and changed if necessary.*



E143950

"Tread Lightly" is an educational program designed to increase public awareness of land-use regulations and responsibilities in our nations wilderness areas. Ford Motor Company joins the U.S. Forest Service and the Bureau of Land Management in encouraging you to help preserve our national forest and other public and private lands by "treading lightly".

### Driving on hilly or sloping terrain

Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should always try to drive straight up or straight down.

**Note:** *Note: Avoid driving crosswise or turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possibly rolling over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear once the ascent has started. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

If you do stall out, do not try to turnaround because you might roll over. It is better to back down to a safe location.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power will cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.



E143949

Descend a hill in the same gear you would use to climb up the hill to avoid excessive brake application and brake overheating. Do not descend in neutral; instead, disengage overdrive or manually shift to a lower gear. When descending a steep hill, avoid sudden hard braking as you could lose control. The front wheels have to be turning in order to steer the vehicle.

Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, therefore apply the brakes steadily. Do not "pump" the brakes.

### Driving on snow and ice

#### WARNING



If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of the vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

## Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

---

**Note:** *Excessive tire slippage can cause transmission damage.*

4WD vehicles have advantages over 2WD vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle. Should you start to slide while driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking as well. Although an 4WD vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it won't stop any faster, because as in other vehicles, braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, apply the brake steadily. Since your vehicle is equipped with a four wheel anti-lock brake system (ABS), do not "pump" the brakes. Refer to the Brakes section of this chapter for additional information on the operation of the anti-lock brake system.

### Maintenance and modifications

The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle have been designed and tested to provide predictable performance whether loaded or empty and durable load carrying capability. For this reason, Ford Motor Company strongly recommends that you do not make modifications such as adding or removing parts (such as lift kits or stabilizer bars) or by using replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

Any modifications to a vehicle that raise the center of gravity can make it more likely the vehicle will rollover as a result of a loss of control. Ford Motor Company recommends that caution be used with any vehicle equipped with a high load or device (such as ladder or luggage racks).

Failure to maintain your vehicle properly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities and adversely affect driver and passenger safety. Frequent inspection of vehicle chassis components is recommended if the vehicle is subjected to off-highway usage.

# Brakes

## GENERAL INFORMATION

**Note:** Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and should be inspected by an authorized dealer. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, the vehicle should be inspected by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning the Alloy Wheels** (page 240).



See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 80).

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

## Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Turn the engine off, shift to position **P** and apply the parking brake, and then inspect the accelerator pedal for any interferences. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

## Emergency Brake Assist

Emergency brake assist detects when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Emergency brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

## Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



This lamp momentarily illuminates when the ignition is turned on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the anti-lock braking system may be disabled and may need to be serviced.



If the system is disabled, normal braking is still effective. If the brake warning lamp illuminates with the parking brake released, have your brake system serviced immediately.

## HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

**Note:** When the system is operating, the brake pedal will pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

The ABS will not eliminate the risks when:

- you drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you
- your vehicle is hydroplaning
- you take corners too fast
- the road surface is poor.



## PARKING BRAKE

### WARNING



Always set the parking brake fully and leave your vehicle with the transmission selector lever in position P.

**Note:** Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.

To apply the parking brake:

1. Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent.

**Note:** If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, move the transmission selector lever to position P and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

**Note:** If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, move the transmission selector lever to P and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

To release the parking brake:

1. Press the brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the lever up slightly.
3. Press the release button and push the lever down.

# Traction Control

---

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.



The stability control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on when the traction control system is turned off.

When the traction control system is turned off or on, a message appears in the information display showing system status.

## USING TRACTION CONTROL

In certain situations (e.g. stuck in snow or mud), turning the traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin with full engine power. Turn off the traction control system using the information display control. See **General Information** (page 84).

### System Indicator Lights and Messages

#### WARNING



If a failure has been detected within the AdvanceTrac system, the stability control light will illuminate steadily. Verify that the AdvanceTrac system was not manually disabled using the information display control. If the stability control light still illuminates steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with AdvanceTrac disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



The stability control light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and flashes when a driving condition activates the stability system.

# Stability Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS

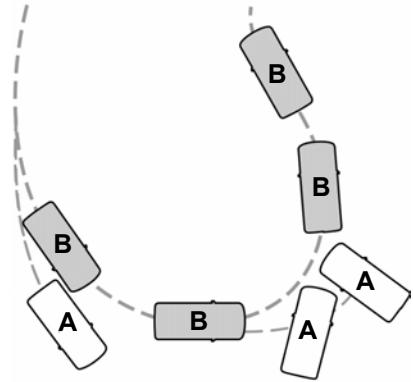


Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of the vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the AdvanceTrac system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the AdvanceTrac system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the AdvanceTrac sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the AdvanceTrac system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the AdvanceTrac system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your AdvanceTrac system activates, **SLOW DOWN**.

The AdvanceTrac with Roll Stability Control system helps you keep control of your vehicle when on a slippery surface. The electronic stability control portion of the system helps avoid skids and lateral slides and roll stability control helps avoid a vehicle rollover. The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction. See **Using Traction Control** (page 158).



E72903

- A Vehicle without AdvanceTrac with RSC skidding off its intended route.
- B Vehicle with AdvanceTrac with RSC maintaining control on a slippery surface.

# Stability Control

---

## USING STABILITY CONTROL


### **AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®)**


The system automatically activates when you start your engine. The AdvanceTrac with RSC system cannot be completely turned off, but the ESC and RSC portions of the system are disabled when the transmission is in R (Reverse). The traction control portion of the system can be turned off independently. See **Using Traction Control** (page 158).


# Parking Aids


## PARKING AID (IF EQUIPPED)

### WARNINGS

 To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the system as contained in this section. Sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving in reverse on a flat surface at parking speeds. Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes, and external motors and fans may also affect the function of the sensing system; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.

 To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in R (Reverse) and when using the sensing system.

 This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging the vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

 Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the system, may create false beeps.

**Note:** Keep the sensors, located on the bumper or fascia, free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.

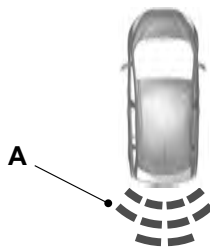
**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with MyKey®, it is possible to prevent turning the sensing system off. See **MyKey®** (page 49).

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of the bumper area. The system turns on automatically whenever the ignition is switched on.

When receiving a detection warning, the radio volume is reduced to a predetermined level. After the warning goes away, the radio volume returns to the previous level.

### Rear Sensing System

The rear sensors are only active when the transmission is in R (Reverse). As the vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases. When the obstacle is fewer than 10 inches (25 centimeters) away, the warning sounds continuously. If a stationary or receding object is detected farther than 10 inches (25 centimeters) from the side of the vehicle, the tone sounds for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the warning sounds again.



E130178

A Coverage area of up to 6 feet (2 meters) from the rear bumper. There is decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.

## Parking Aids

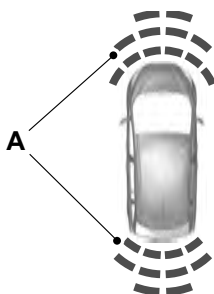
The system detects certain objects while the transmission is in R (Reverse):

- and moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less
- but not moving, and a moving object is approaching the rear of the vehicle at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less
- and moving at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h) and a moving object is approaching the rear of the vehicle at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h).

The system can be turned off using the information display control. See **General Information** (page 84). If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display and does not allow the driver to switch the faulted system on.

### Front Sensing System

The front sensors are active when the gearshift is in any position other than P (Park) or N (Neutral) and the vehicle speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).



E130382

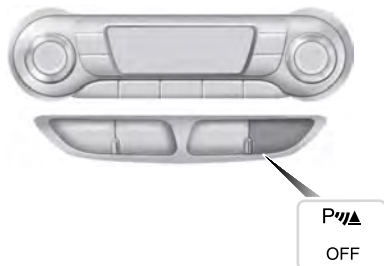
- A Coverage area of up to 27 inches (70 centimeters) from the front of the vehicle and about 6–14 inches (15–35 centimeters) to the side of the front end of the vehicle. Refer to the reverse sensing section for details on coverage area.

The system sounds an audible warning when obstacles are near either bumper in the following manner:

- Objects detected by the front sensors are indicated by a high-pitched tone from the front radio speakers.
- Objects detected by the rear sensors are indicated by a lower pitched tone from the rear radio speakers.
- The sensing system reports the obstacle which is closest to the front or rear of the vehicle. For example, if an obstacle is 24 inches (60 centimeters) from the front of the vehicle and, at the same time, an obstacle is only 16 inches (40 centimeters) from the rear of the vehicle, the lower pitched tone sounds.
- An alternating warning sounds from the front and rear if there are objects at both bumpers that are closer than 10 inches (25 centimeters).

## Parking Aids

For specific information on the reverse sensing portion of the system, refer to that section.



F1427434

Press the button to switch the system off. It will remain off for the entire ignition cycle.

### ACTIVE PARK ASSIST (IF

EQUIPPED)

#### WARNING



This system is designed to be a supplementary park aid. It may not work in all conditions and is not intended to replace the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is responsible for avoiding hazards and maintaining a safe distance and speed, even when the system is in use.

**Note:** The driver is always responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.

The system detects an available parallel parking space and automatically steers the vehicle into the space (hands-free) while you control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly instructs you to park the vehicle.

The system may not function correctly if something passes between the front bumper and the parking space (i.e. a pedestrian or cyclist) or if the edge of the neighboring parked vehicle is high from the ground (i.e. a bus, tow truck or flatbed truck).

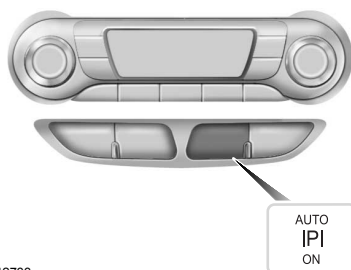
**Note:** The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.

**Note:** The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.

The system should not be used if:

- a foreign object (i.e. bike rack or trailer) is attached to the front or rear of the vehicle or at another location close to the sensors.
- an overhanging object (i.e. surfboard) is attached to the roof.
- the front bumper or side sensors are damaged (i.e. in a collision) or obstructed by a foreign object (i.e. front bumper cover).
- a mini-spare tire is in use.

### Using Active Park Assist

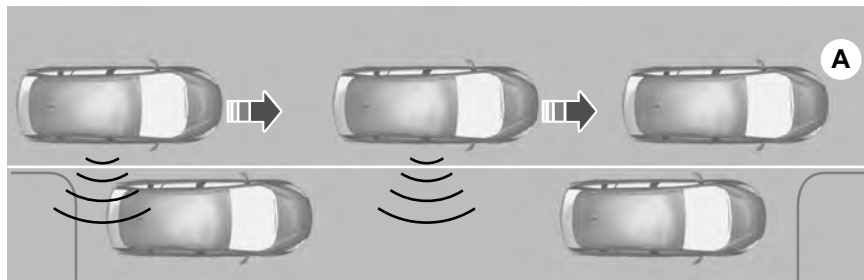


E142733

Press the button. The touch screen displays a message and a corresponding graphic to indicate it's searching for a parking space. Use the turn signal to indicate which side of the vehicle you want the system to search on.

## Parking Aids

**Note:** If the turn signal is not on, the system automatically searches on the vehicle's passenger side.



E130107

When a suitable space is found, the touch screen displays a message and a chime sounds. Slow down and stop at approximately position (A), then follow the instructions on the touch screen.

**Note:** You must observe that the selected space remains clear of obstructions at all times in the maneuver.

**Note:** Vehicles with overhanging loads (e.g. a bus or a truck), street furniture and other items may not be detected by active park assist. You must make sure the selected space is suitable for parking.

**Note:** The vehicle should be driven as parallel to other vehicles as possible while passing a parking space.

**Note:** The system always offers the last detected parking space (i.e. if the vehicle detects multiple spaces while you are driving, it offers the last one).

**Note:** If driven above approximately 20 mph (35 km/h), the touch screen shows a message to alert you to reduce vehicle speed.

### Automatic Steering into Parking Space

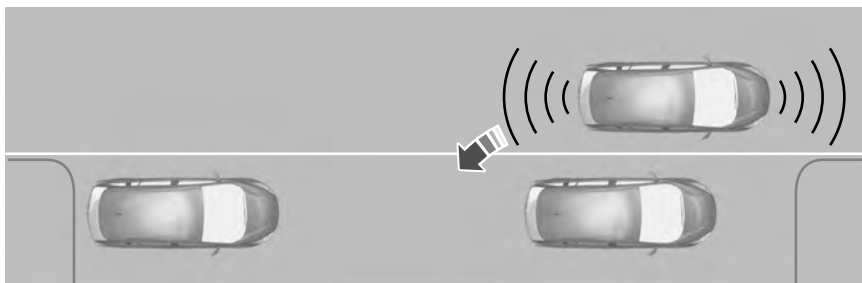
**Note:** If vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the system switches off and you need to take full control of the vehicle.

**Note:** If a maneuver is interrupted before completion, the system switches off. The steering wheel position will not indicate the actual position of the steering and you have to full take control of the vehicle.

With your hands off the wheel (and nothing obstructing its movement) and the transmission in R (Reverse), the vehicle steers itself as instructions to safely move the vehicle back and forward in the space are displayed in the touch screen. While reversing, the touch screen displays a message instructing you to check your surroundings (for safety reasons) and to back-up slowly, accompanied by a corresponding graphic.

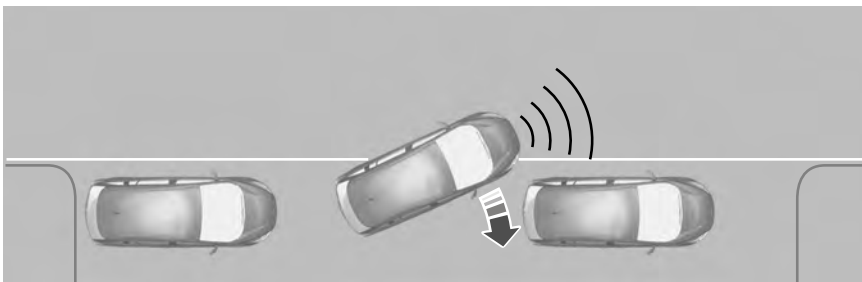


## Parking Aids



E130108

When you think the vehicle has enough space in front and behind it, or you hear a solid tone from the parking aid, bring the vehicle to a complete stop.



E130109

When automatic steering is finished, the touch screen displays a message indicating that the active park assist process is done. The driver is responsible for checking the parking job and making any necessary corrections before putting the transmission in P (Park).

### Deactivating the Park Assist Feature

The system can be deactivated manually by:

- pressing the active park assist button
- grabbing the steering wheel

- driving above approximately 20 mph (35 km/h) for 30 seconds during an active park search
- driving above 6 mph (10 km/h) during automatic steering
- turning off the traction control system.

Certain vehicle conditions can also deactivate the system, such as:

- Traction control has activated on a slippery or loose surface.
- There is an anti-lock brake system activation or failure.

## Parking Aids

- Any door (except the driver's) opens.
- Something touches the steering wheel.

If a problem occurs with the system, a warning message is displayed, followed by a chime. Occasional system messages may occur in normal operation. For recurring or frequent system faults, contact an authorized dealer to have your vehicle serviced.

### Troubleshooting the System

<b>The system does not look for a space</b>
The traction control system may be off
Any door (except the driver's) may not be completely closed

<b>The system does not offer a particular space</b>
Something may be contacting the front bumper or side sensors
There is not enough room on both sides of the vehicle in order to park
There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space
The vehicle is farther than 5 ft (1.5 m) from the parking space
The vehicle is closer than 16 in. (40 cm) from neighboring parked vehicles
The transmission is in R (Reverse); the vehicle must be moving forward to detect a parking space

<b>The system does not position the vehicle where I want in the space</b>
The vehicle is rolling in the opposite direction of the transmission (i.e. rolling forward when R [Reverse] is selected)
The transmission is in R (Reverse); the vehicle must be moving forward to detect a parking space
An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from aligning the vehicle properly
Vehicles or objects bordering the space may not be positioned correctly
The vehicle was pulled too far past the parking space. The system performs best when you drive the same distance past the parking space

## Parking Aids

### The system does not position the vehicle where I want in the space

The tires may not be installed or maintained correctly (i.e. not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes)

A repair or alteration has changed detection capabilities


A parked vehicle has a high attachment (i.e. salt sprayer, snowplow, moving truck bed, etc.)


The parking space length or position of parked objects changed after your vehicle passed


The temperature around your vehicle changes quickly (i.e. driving from a heated garage into the cold, or after leaving a car wash)


## REAR VIEW CAMERA (IF EQUIPPED)


### WARNINGS

 The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

 Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

 Back up as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop the vehicle.

 Use caution when using the rear video camera and the liftgate is ajar. If the liftgate is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines (if enabled) have been removed when the liftgate is ajar.

 Use caution when turning camera features on or off while in R (Reverse). Make sure the vehicle is not moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind the vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind the vehicle.



E142435

The camera is located on the liftgate.

### Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in R (Reverse).

# Parking Aids

The system uses three types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Active guidelines: Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object (i.e. a trailer).

**Note:** If the transmission is in R (Reverse) and the luggage compartment is ajar, no rear view camera features are displayed.

**Note:** If the image comes on while the transmission is not in R (Reverse), have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

**Note:** When towing, the camera only sees what is being towed behind your vehicle. This might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear once the trailer tow connector is engaged.

**Note:** The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if one or both reverse lamps are not operating.
- The camera's view is obstructed by mud, water or debris. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The rear of the vehicle is hit or damaged, causing the camera to become misaligned.

To access any of the rear view camera system settings, make the following selections in the touch screen when the transmission is not in R (Reverse):

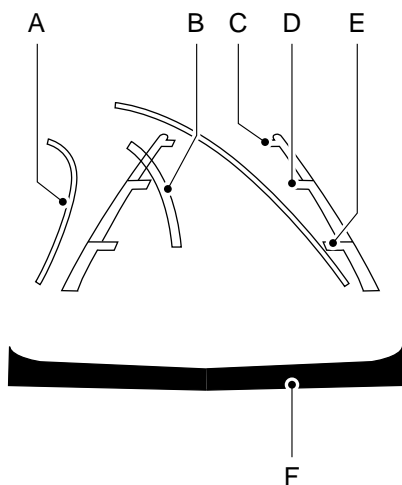
- Menu > Vehicle > Rear View Camera

After changing a system setting, the touch screen shows a preview of the selected features.

## Guidelines and the Centerline

**Note:** Active guidelines and fixed guidelines are only available when the transmission is in R (Reverse).

**Note:** The centerline is only available if Active or Fixed guidelines are on.



E142436

- A Active guidelines
- B Centerline
- C Fixed guideline: Green zone
- D Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
- E Fixed guideline: Red zone
- F Rear bumper

## Parking Aids

Active guidelines are only shown with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position is changed while reversing, the vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines are not shown when the steering wheel position is straight.

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle.

Selectable settings for this feature are ACTIVE + FIXED, FIXED and OFF.

### Visual Park Aid Alert

**Note:** *Visual park alert is only available when the transmission is in R (Reverse).*

**Note:** *The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.*

The system uses red, yellow and green highlights which appear on top of the video image when an object is detected by the reverse sensing system. The alert highlights the closest object detected. The reverse sensing alert can be disabled and if visual park aid alert is enabled, highlighted areas are still displayed.

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

### Manual Zoom

#### WARNING



When manual zoom is on, the full area behind the vehicle is not shown. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

**Note:** *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in R (Reverse).*

**Note:** *When manual zoom is enabled, only the centerline is shown.*

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind the vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in R (Reverse). When the transmission is shifted out of R (Reverse), the feature automatically turns off and must be reset when it is used again.

Selectable settings for this feature are OFF, Level 1, Level 2 or Level 3. Press the up and down arrows to change the view. The selection level appears between the buttons (i.e. Level 1). The default setting for the manual zoom is OFF.

### Rear Camera Delay

When shifting the transmission out of R (Reverse) and into any gear other than P (Park), the camera image remains in the display until the vehicle speed reaches 5 mph (8 km/h). This occurs when the rear camera delay feature is on, or until a radio button is selected.

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF. The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

# Cruise Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

## USING CRUISE CONTROL

### WARNING



Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, slippery or unpaved.

**Note:** Vehicle speed may vary momentarily when driving up or down a steep hill. Apply the brakes if the vehicle speed increases above the set speed while driving downhill.

**Note:** Cruise control will disengage if the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below your set speed while driving uphill.

## Switching On Cruise Control



E142437

Press and release ON.

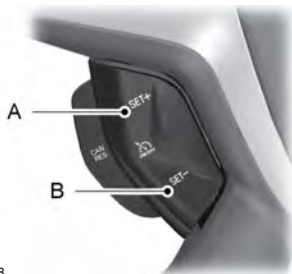
## Setting a Speed

Press and release SET+.



The indicator will display in the instrument cluster.

## Changing the Set Speed



E142438

- A Accelerate
- B Decelerate

- Press and hold SET+ or SET-. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.
- Press and release SET+ or SET-. The set speed will change in approximately 1 mph (2 km/h) increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release SET+.

## Canceling a Set Speed

Pull CAN toward you and release, or tap the brake pedal. The set speed will not be erased.

## Resuming a Set Speed

Pull RES toward you and release.

## Switching Off Cruise Control

**Note:** The set speed is erased when you switch off cruise control.

Press and release OFF or switch off the ignition.

# Driving Aids

## BLIND SPOT MONITOR

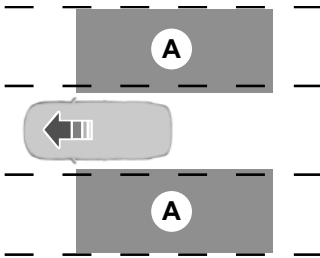
### Blind Spot Information System (BLIS®) with Cross Traffic Alert (if

Equipped)

#### WARNING



To help avoid injuries, NEVER use the BLIS as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors and looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. BLIS is not a replacement for careful driving and only an assist.



E124788

BLIS aids you in detecting vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone (A). The detection area is on both sides of the vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 10 feet (3 meters) beyond the bumper. The system alerts you if certain vehicles enter the blind spot zone while driving.

Cross traffic alert warns you of vehicles approaching from the sides when the transmission is in R (Reverse).

**Note:** BLIS is not designed to prevent contact with other vehicles or objects; or to detect parked vehicles, people, animals or infrastructure (fences, guardrails, trees, etc.). It is designed to alert the driver to vehicles in the blind zones.

**Note:** When a vehicle passes quickly through the blind zone, typically fewer than two seconds, the system does not trigger.

#### Using the Systems

BLIS turns on when the engine is started and the vehicle is driven forward above 3 mph (5 km/h); it remains on while the transmission is in D (Drive) and N (Neutral). If shifted out of D (Drive) or N (Neutral), the system enters cross traffic alert mode. Once shifted back into D (Drive), BLIS turns back on when the vehicle is driven above 3 mph (5 km/h).

**Note:** BLIS does not function in R (Reverse) or P (Park) or provide any additional warning when a turn signal is on.

Cross traffic alert detects approaching vehicles from up to 45 feet (14 meters) away though coverage decreases when the sensors are blocked. Reversing slowly helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

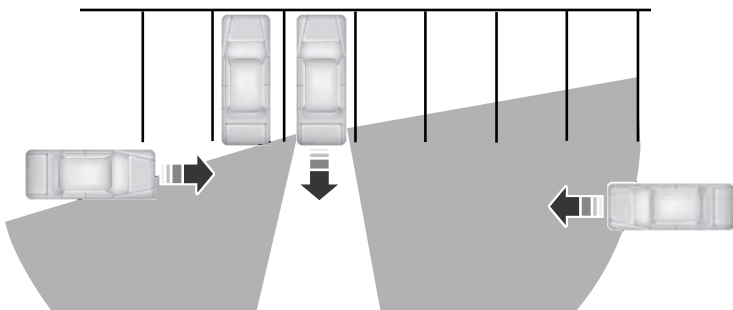
#### WARNING



To help avoid personal injury, NEVER use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors and looking over your shoulder before backing out of a parking space. Cross traffic alert is not a replacement for careful driving and only an assist.

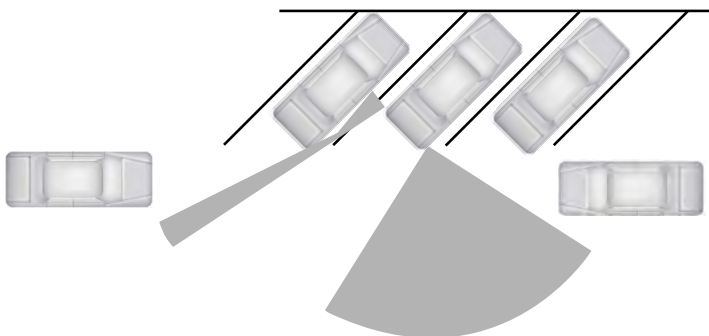
## Driving Aids

---



E142440

In this first example, the left sensor is only partially obstructed; zone coverage is nearly maximized.



E142441

Zone coverage also decreases when parking at shallow angles. Here, the left sensor is mostly obstructed; zone coverage on that side is severely limited.



# Driving Aids

## System Lights and Messages



E142442

The BLIS and cross traffic alert systems illuminate a yellow alert indicator in the outside mirror on the side of the vehicle the approaching vehicle is coming from.

**Note:** *The alert indicator dims when nighttime darkness is detected.*

Cross traffic alert also sounds a series of tones and a message appears in the information display indicating a vehicle is coming from the right or left. Cross traffic alert works with the reverse sensing system which sounds its own series of tones. See **Parking Aid** (page 161).

## System Sensors

### WARNING



Just prior to the system recognizing a blocked condition and alerting the driver, the number of missed objects will increase. To help avoid injuries, NEVER use the BLIS as a replacement for using the side and rear view mirrors and looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. BLIS is not a replacement for careful driving and only an assist.

**Note:** *It is possible to get a blockage warning with no blockage present; this is rare and known as a false blockage warning. A false blocked condition either self-corrects or clears after a key cycle.*



E142443

The system uses radar sensors which are located behind the bumper fascia on each side of your vehicle. Do not allow these areas to become obstructed by mud, snow or bumper stickers, as this can cause degraded system performance.

If the system detects a degraded performance condition, a message warning of a blocked sensor or a message warning of low visibility will appear in the information display and the alert indicator illuminates in the appropriate mirror(s). The information display warning can be cleared but the alert indicator remains illuminated.

When the blockage is removed, the system can be reset in two ways:

- when at least two objects are detected while driving, or
- turn the ignition from on to off, then back on.

If the blockage is still present after the key cycle, the system senses again that it is blocked after driving in traffic.

## Driving Aids

Reasons for messages being displayed	
The radar surface is dirty or obstructed	Clean the fascia area in front of the radar or remove the obstruction.
The radar surface is not dirty or obstructed	Drive normally in traffic for a few minutes to allow the radar to detect passing vehicles so it can clear the blocked state.
Heavy rain-fall/snow-fall interferes with the radar signals	No action required. The system automatically resets to an unblocked state once the rainfall or snowfall rate decreases or stops. Do not use BLIS or cross traffic alert in these conditions.

### System Limitations

The BLIS and cross traffic alert systems do have their limitations; situations such as severe weather conditions or debris build-up on the sensor area may limit vehicle detection.

The following are other situations that may limit the BLIS:

- Certain maneuvering of vehicles entering and exiting the blind zone.
- Vehicles passing through the blind zone at very fast rates.
- When several vehicles forming a convoy pass through the blind zone.

The following are other situations that may limit the cross traffic alert system:

- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects obstructing the sensors.
- Approaching vehicles passing at speeds greater than 15 mph (24 km/h).

- Driving in reverse faster than 3 mph (5 km/h).
- Backing out of an angled parking spot.

### False Alerts

**Note:** *If the vehicle has a factory equipped tow bar, and it is towing a trailer, the sensors will detect the trailer and turn the BLIS off to avoid false alerts. For non-factory equipped tow bars you may want to turn the BLIS off manually.*

There may be certain instances when either the BLIS or cross traffic alert systems illuminate the alert indicator with no vehicle in the coverage zone; this is known as a false alert. Some amount of false alerts are normal; they are temporary and self-correct.

### System Errors

If either system senses a problem with the left or right sensor, the BLIS telltale illuminates and remains on and the following will appear in the information display:

- BLIS: X sensor fault Service req'd or
- Cross Traffic malfunction Service req'd

When problems that may cause the left or right indicator not to illuminate, only the information display faults appear.

### Switching the Systems Off and On

One or both systems can be switched off temporarily by using the information display control. See **General Information** (page 84). When the BLIS is switched off, you will not receive alerts and a telltale illuminates in the information display. The system switches back on whenever the ignition is switched on.

# Driving Aids

One or both systems can also be switched off permanently at your authorized dealer. Once switched off, switching it back on must also be done at your authorized dealer.

## ECO MODE

This system assists you in driving more efficiently by constantly monitoring characteristics of gear changing, anticipation of traffic conditions and speeds while driving.

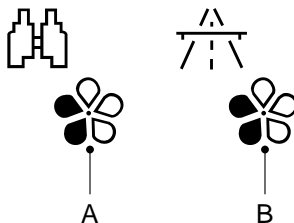
The value of these characteristics is represented by petals shown in the display, with five petals being the most efficient. The more efficiently you drive, the better the rating, and the better your overall fuel economy

**Note:** *These efficiency values do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure. It might vary as it is not only related to these driving habits, but also influenced by many other factors such as short trips and cold starts.*

**Note:** *Frequent short trips, where the engine does not fully warm up, will also increase fuel consumption*

The system is accessed using the information display control. See **General Information** (page 84).

## Type 1



E142444

A Anticipation

B Efficient speed

## Anticipation

Adjust your vehicle speed and the distance to other vehicles to avoid the need for heavy braking or acceleration to improve fuel economy.

## Efficient speed

Reduce your cruising speed on open roads to improve economy. Higher speeds use more fuel.

## Type 2 and 3

The relevant information is shown in the display.

## Resetting Eco Mode

Reset the average fuel consumption by using the information display control.

**Note:** *New values may take a short time to calculate*

# Driving Aids

---

## STEERING

### Electric Power Steering

#### WARNINGS



The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to ensure proper operation. When a system error is detected a steering message will appear in the information display.



The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to ensure proper operation of the electronic system. When an electronic error is detected, a message will be displayed in the information display. If this happens, stop the vehicle in a safe place, and turn off the engine. After at least 10 seconds, reset the system by restarting the engine, and watch the information display for a steering message. If a steering message returns, or returns while driving, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked.



Obtain immediate service if a system error is detected. You may not notice any difference in the feel of your steering, but a serious condition may exist. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

---

Your vehicle is equipped with an electric power-assisted steering system. There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving (or if the ignition is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort. Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort it takes for you to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and permanent damage to your steering system. If this should occur, you will neither lose the ability to steer the vehicle manually nor will it cause permanent damage. Typical steering and driving maneuvers will allow the system to cool and steering assist will return to normal.

#### Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- an improperly inflated tire
- uneven tire wear
- loose or worn suspension components
- loose or worn steering components
- improper vehicle alignment

A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander or pull.

# Load Carrying

## REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

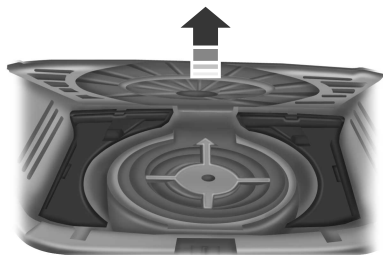
### Passenger Compartment Floor



E78097

The under floor storage compartment is located behind the front passenger seat.

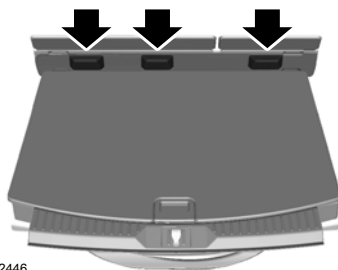
### Cargo Management System (If Equipped)



E142445

The system is located in the floor of the cargo area. Lift the handle to open.

### Adjustable Load Floor (If Equipped)



E142446

Vehicles with the standard size spare tire can adjust the load floor to two positions. The front of the load floor can be placed either on (for high position) or below (for low position) the ledges behind the rear seats. The rear of the load floor always sits on the two small shelves located on the liftgate trim.

## LUGGAGE COVERS

### WARNINGS



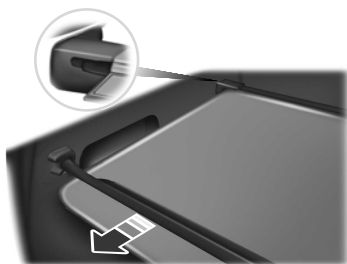
Make sure that the posts are properly latched in mounting features. The cover may cause injury in a sudden stop or accident if it is not securely installed.



Do not place any objects on the cargo area shade. They may obstruct your vision or strike occupants of vehicle in the case of a sudden stop or collision.

Use the shade to cover items in the cargo area of your vehicle.

## Load Carrying



E142447

Insert the ends of the cargo shade into the mounting features located behind the rear seat on the rear trim panels to install the shade.

To operate the shade:

1. Pull the rear edge of the cargo shade rearward.
2. Secure both ends of the support rod into the retention slots located on the rear quarter trim panels.

## ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

### WARNING



When loading the roof rail crossbars, it is recommended to evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, should be taken when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The maximum recommended load, evenly distributed on the crossbars, is:

- 100 pounds (45 kilograms) for vehicles without a moonroof
- 45 pounds (20 kilograms) for vehicles with a moonroof.

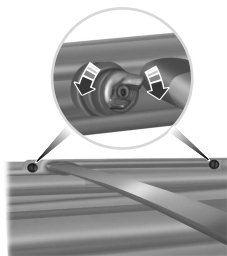
**Note:** Loads should never be placed directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.

For proper function of the roof rack system, loads must be placed directly on crossbars affixed to the roof rack side rails. Your vehicle may be equipped with factory-installed crossbars. Ford Genuine Accessory crossbars, designed specifically for your vehicle, are also recommended for use with your roof rack system.

Make sure that the load is securely fastened. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

### Adjusting the Crossbar (If Equipped)

**Note:** Wind noise can be minimized by either removing or repositioning the crossbar when not in use. Position the front crossbar in the rearward position to minimize wind noise. The front crossbar can be adjusted or removed using the steps below. The rear crossbar fasteners can be removed by unscrewing the assembly.



E142448

# Load Carrying

1. Remove the crossbar thumbwheels at both sides of the front crossbar by turning them counterclockwise.

**Note:** A small screwdriver or similar tool can be used to loosen the thumbwheel. Apply to the fastener head on the top of the thumbwheel or insert the shaft between the two paddles of the thumbwheel and rotate it loose.

2. Remove the crossbar by sliding the ends off of the shoulder bolts in the side rails.
3. Move the crossbar to the new side rail position and slide the crossbar onto the shoulder bolt at that position.
4. Replace and tighten the thumbwheels at both sides of the crossbar by turning them clockwise until tight. A small screwdriver or similar tool can be used to tighten if necessary.

Make sure to check that the thumbwheels are tight each time load is added or removed from the roof rack, and periodically while traveling. Make sure that the load is secure before traveling.

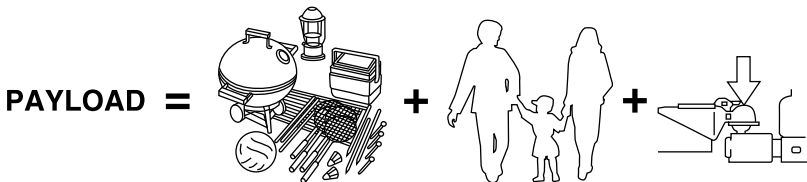
## LOAD LIMIT

### Vehicle loading - with and without a trailer

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle, trailer or both, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label:

**Base Curb Weight** - is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

**Vehicle Curb Weight** - is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your authorized dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.



E142513

# Load Carrying

**Payload** - is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door (vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a Tire Label). Look for **"THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX kg OR XXX lb."** for maximum


payload. The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If any aftermarket or authorized-dealer installed equipment has been installed on the vehicle, the weight of the equipment must be subtracted from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.

**Example only:**

## WARNING



The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.




### TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

SEATING CAPACITY	TOTAL 5	FRONT 2	REAR 3
------------------	---------	---------	--------

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed : **XXX kg or XXX lbs.**

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE
FRONT	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI
REAR	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI
SPARE	T145/80D16 P225/60R17	420 KPA, 60 PSI 200 KPA, 29 PSI


SEE OWNERS  
MANUAL FOR  
ADDITIONAL  
INFORMATION



E142516



# Load Carrying



## TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

## RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE PLACES		TOTAL 5	FRONT AVANT 2	REAR ARRIERE 3
--------------------------------------	--	---------	------------------	-------------------

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed  
 Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser

492


kg or  
kg ou

1085

lbs.  
lb.

TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS A FROID		SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION  VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT AVANT	P235/70R16	240 KPA, 35 PSI		
REAR ARRIERE	P235/70R16	240 KPA, 35 PSI		
SPARE DE SECOURS	T145/90R17	415 KPA, 60 PSI		

XXXXXXXXXX



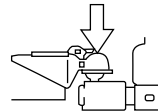
E142517

**CARGO**

=



+



E142518

**Cargo Weight** – includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, trailer tongue load or king pin weight is also part of cargo weight.

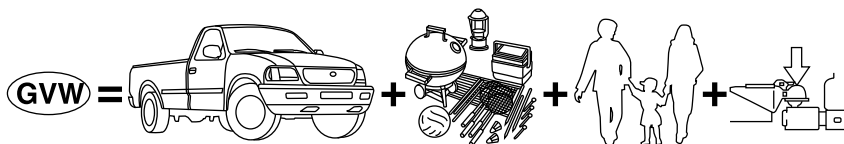
**GAW (Gross Axle Weight)** - is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) – including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

**GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)** - is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). **These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.**

**Note:** For trailer towing information refer to the RV and Trailer Towing Guide provided by your authorized dealer.

## Load Carrying

---




E142521

**GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)** - is the Vehicle Curb Weight + cargo + passengers.


**GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)** - is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). **The GVWR is shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position.**

# Load Carrying

## Example only:

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.									
DATE: XX/XX		GVWR: XXXXXLB/ XXXXXKG							
FRONT GAWR: XXXXL		REAR GAWR: XXXXLB							
XXXXKG		XXXXKG		WITH					
XXXX/XXXXXX		XXXX/XXXXXX		TIRES					
XXXX/XX		XXXX/XX		RIMS					
AT XXX kPa/XX		PSI COLD		AT XXX kPa/XX		PSI COLD			
THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.									
VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX								XXXXX	
TYPE: XXX								XXXXX	
									
EXT PNT: XX		RC: XX		DSO:					
WB	INT	TR	TP/PS	R	AXLE	TR	SPR	XXXXX	
XXX	XX		X	XX	X	XX	XXX		
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXX XXXX-XXXXXX-XX									

E142523

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.									
DATE: XX/XX		GVWR/PNBV: XXXXLB/XXXXKG							
FRONT GAWR/PNBE AY		REAR GAWR/ PNBE AR							
XXXX/XXXXB		XXXXKG/XXXXB							
WITH/AVEC		TIRES/PNEUS							
XXXX/XXXXX		XXXX/XXXXX							
XXXX/XXXXX		RIMS/JANTES XXXXXX							
AT/A kPa/PSI/LPC		XXX/XX		COLD/A FROID		XXX/XX			
						/JUMEELES			
VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX								XXXXXX	
TYPE: XXX/XXXXX								COMPLIES: XXXX/XXX - XXX XXXXXX	
									
EXT PNT: U		RC: XX		DSO:					
WB	INT	TR	TP/PS	R	AXLE	TR	SPR	XXXXX	
XXX	XX		X	XX	X	XXX	XXX		
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXX XXXX-XXXXXX-XX									

E142524

# Load Carrying

## WARNING



Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification Label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.

$$\text{GCW} = \text{GVW} + \text{[Trailer Illustration]}$$

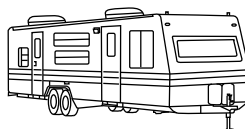
E142526

**GCW (Gross Combined Weight)** - is the weight of the loaded vehicle (GVW) plus the weight of the fully loaded trailer

**GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)** - is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer - including all cargo and passengers - that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at GVWR, not at GCWR.) Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the GCW of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the GVWR of the towing vehicle.

**The GCW must never exceed the GCWR.**

**Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight** - is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. It assumes a vehicle with only mandatory options, no cargo (internal or external), a tongue load of 10–15% (conventional trailer) or king pin weight of 15–25% (fifth wheel trailer), and driver only (150 lb. [68 kg]). **Consult your authorized dealer (or the RV and Trailer Towing Guide provided by your authorized dealer) for more detailed information.**



**Tongue Load or Fifth Wheel King Pin Weight** - refers to the amount of the weight that a trailer pushes down on a trailer hitch.

**Examples:** For a 5000 lb. (2268 kg) conventional trailer, multiply 5000 by 0.10 and 0.15 to obtain a proper tongue load range of 500 to 750 lb. (227 to 340 kg). For an 11500 lb. (5216 kg) fifth wheel trailer, multiply by 0.15 and 0.25 to obtain a proper king pin load range of 1725 to 2875 lb. (782 to 1304 kg).

## WARNINGS



Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.



Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.



Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury.

# Load Carrying

---

## **Steps for determining the correct load limit:**

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb.  $(1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lb.})$ . In metric units  $(635 - 340 (5 \times 68) = 295 \text{ kg.})$
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

## Load Carrying

---

The following gives you a few examples on how to calculate the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity:

- Another example for your vehicle with 1400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, 4 of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 lb. (99 kg) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 lb. (13.5 kg) each. The calculation would be:  $1400 - (5 \times 220) - (5 \times 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150$  lb. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (5 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (5 \times 13.5 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5 \text{ kg}$ .
- A final example for your vehicle with 1,400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past 2 years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for 12-100 lb. (45 kg) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 lb. (99 kg), the calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = -240$  lb. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (12 \times 45 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103 \text{ kg}$ . You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 lb. (104 kg). If you remove 3-100 lb. (45 kg) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (9 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60$  lb. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (9 \times 45 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32 \text{ kg}$ .

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the Front or the Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position.

# Load Carrying

---

## Special Loading Instructions for Owners of Pick-up Trucks and Utility-type Vehicles

### WARNING



Loaded vehicles may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, should be taken when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

---

Your vehicle can haul more cargo and people than most passenger cars. Depending upon the type and placement of the load, hauling cargo and people may raise the center of gravity of the vehicle.

# Towing

## TOWING A TRAILER

### WARNINGS



Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.



Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of the vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Your vehicle's load capacity is designated by weight, not by volume, so you cannot necessarily use all available space when loading a vehicle.

Towing a trailer places an additional load on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires and suspension. Inspect these components periodically during, and after, any towing operation.

### TRAILER SWAY CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

**Note:** This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.

**Note:** This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.

**Note:** In some cases, if vehicle speed is too high, the system may activate multiple times, gradually reducing vehicle speed.

This feature applies the vehicle brakes at individual wheels and, if necessary, reduces engine power. If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control light flashes. The first thing to do is slow the vehicle down, then pull safely to the side of the road and check for proper tongue load and trailer load distribution. See **Load Carrying** (page 177).

## RECOMMENDED TOWING WEIGHTS

**Note:** For high altitude operation, reduce the gross combined weight by 2% per 1000 feet (300 meters) elevation.

**Note:** Certain states require electric trailer brakes for trailers over a specified weight. Be sure to check state regulations for this specified weight. The maximum trailer weights listed may be limited to this specified weight, as the vehicle's electrical system does not include the wiring connector needed to activate electric trailer brakes.

Powertrain	Maximum GCWR - lb (kg)	Maximum Trailer Weight - lb (kg)	Maximum Trailer Frontal Area - ft <sup>2</sup> (m <sup>2</sup> )
2WD 1.6L	5866 (2661)	2000 (907)	20 (1.86)
4WD 1.6L	6035 (2737)	2000 (907)	20 (1.86)
2WD 2.0L <sup>1</sup>	5977 (2711)	2000 (907)	20 (1.86)
2WD 2.0L <sup>2</sup>	7477 (3391)	3500 (1588)	30 (2.78)
4WD 2.0L <sup>1</sup>	6126 (2779)	2000 (907)	20 (1.86)



## Towing

---

<b>Powertrain</b>	<b>Maximum GCWR - lb (kg)</b>	<b>Maximum Trailer Weight - lb (kg)</b>	<b>Maximum Trailer Frontal Area -ft<sup>2</sup> (m<sup>2</sup>)</b>
4WD 2.0L <sup>2</sup>	7626 (3459)	3500 (1588)	30 (2.78)
2WD 2.5L	5417 (2457)	2000 (907)	20 (1.86)

<sup>1</sup> Without trailer tow package.

<sup>2</sup> With trailer tow package.

# Towing

## ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

Follow these guidelines to ensure safe towing:

- Do not tow a trailer until your vehicle has been driven at least 1000 miles (1600 kilometers).
- Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.
- Refer to the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.
- Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer. Refer to your scheduled maintenance information.

Load specification terms are found on the tire label and Safety Compliance Certification Label. Instructions on calculating your vehicle's load can be found earlier in this manual. See **Load Limit** (page 179). Remember to account for the trailer tongue weight as part of the vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

### Hitches

Do not use a hitch that either clamps onto the bumper or attaches to the axle. Distribute the trailer load so 10-15% of the total trailer weight is on the tongue.

### Safety Chains

**Note:** *Never attach safety chains to the bumper.*

Always connect the safety chains to the vehicle's hook retainers. To connect the safety chains, cross them under the trailer tongue and allow slack for turning corners.

If you use a rental trailer, follow the rental agency's instructions.

## Trailer Brakes

### WARNING



Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if installed properly and adjusted to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and Federal regulations.

The braking system of the tow vehicle is rated for operation at the GVWR not GCWR.

## Trailer Lamps

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Ensure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working. Contact your authorized dealer or trailer rental agency for proper instructions and equipment for hooking up the lamps.

## Before Towing a Trailer

Practice turning, stopping and backing-up to get the feel of the vehicle-trailer combination before starting on a trip. When turning, make wider turns so the trailer wheels will clear curbs and other obstacles.

# Towing

## When Towing a Trailer

- Do not drive faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) during the first 500 miles (800 kilometers) and do not make full-throttle starts.
- Check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts thoroughly after you have traveled 50 miles (80 km).
- Place the gearshift lever in position **P** to aid in engine and transmission cooling and A/C efficiency during hot weather while stopped in traffic.
- Turn off the speed control. The speed control may turn off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.
- Shift to a lower gear when driving down a long or steep hill. Do not apply the brakes continuously, as they may overheat and become less effective.
- If your transmission is equipped with the grade assist feature, use this feature when towing. This provides engine braking and helps eliminate excessive transmission shifting for optimum fuel economy and transmission cooling.
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached; anticipate stops and brake gradually.
- Avoid parking on a grade. However, if you must park on a grade, place wheel chocks under the trailer's wheels.

## TOWING POINTS (IF EQUIPPED)

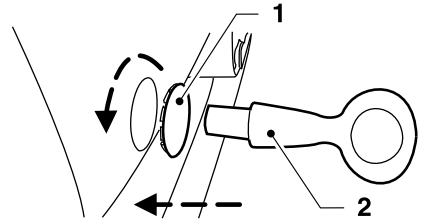
### Towing Eye Location

The screw-in towing eye is located in the spare wheel well.

The towing eye must **always** be carried in the vehicle.

## Installing the Towing Eye

The screw-in towing eye has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened.



E146284

Insert a suitable object to pry open the cover (1). Use recessed/notched portion of the cover. Screw in the towing eye (2).

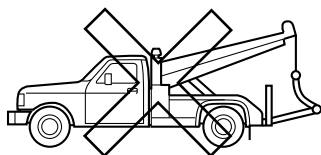
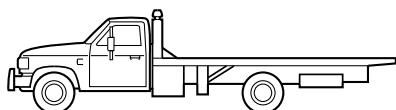
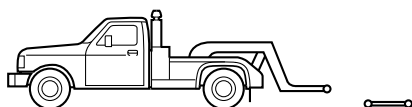
## Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels

Switch the ignition to the on position. Failure to do so results in steering lock and non-function of indicator and brake lamps.

Braking and steering efforts are high if the engine is not running. Maintain increased stopping distances.

# Towing

## TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



E143886

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

It is recommended that your vehicle be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

Front-wheel drive (FWD) vehicles can be towed from the front if proper wheel lift equipment is used to raise the front wheels off the ground. The rear wheels can be left on the ground when towed in this fashion.

FWD vehicles can also be towed from the rear using wheel lift equipment; however, it is required that the front wheels be placed on a dolly to prevent damage to the transmission.

Four-wheel drive (4WD) vehicles must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment, with all the wheels off the ground, to prevent damage to the transmission, 4WD system or vehicle. If the vehicle is towed by other means or incorrectly, vehicle damage may occur.

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

### Emergency Towing

In the event your vehicle becomes disabled (without access to wheel dollies, car-hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle), it can be flat-towed (all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain/transmission configuration) under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission gear shift lever is placed in position **N**. If The transmission is gear shift lever cannot be moved to position **N**, it may need to be overridden. See **Transmission** (page 147).
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 miles (80 kilometers).

# Towing

---

## Recreational Towing

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. These guidelines are designed to ensure that your transmission is not damaged.

Front-wheel drive (FWD) vehicles can be towed with the front wheels off the ground by using a tow dolly. If you are using a tow dolly follow the instructions specified by the equipment provider.

Four-wheel drive (4WD) vehicles cannot be towed with any wheels on the ground, as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. It is recommended to tow your vehicle with all four (4) wheels off the ground such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, no recreational towing is permitted.

# Driving Hints

---

## BREAKING-IN

You need to break in new tires for approximately 300 miles (480 kilometers). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

Do not tow during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers).

## ECONOMICAL DRIVING

Fuel economy is affected by several things such as how you drive, the conditions you drive under and how you maintain your vehicle.

There are some things to keep in mind that may improve your fuel economy:

- Accelerate and slow down in a smooth, moderate fashion.
- Drive at steady speeds without stopping.
- Anticipate stops; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving.
- Close the windows for high-speed driving.
- Drive at reasonable speeds (traveling at 55 mph [88 km/h] uses 15% less fuel than traveling at 65 mph [105 km/h]).
- Keep the tires properly inflated and use only the recommended size.
- Use the recommended engine oil.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

There are also some things you may not want to do because they may reduce your fuel economy:

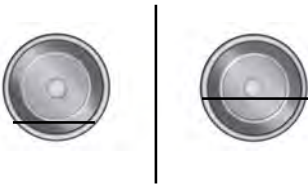
- Sudden accelerations or hard accelerations.
- Rev the engine before turning it off.
- Idle for periods longer than one minute.
- Warm up your vehicle on cold mornings.
- Use the air conditioner or front defroster.
- Use the speed control in hilly terrain.
- Rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving.
- Drive a heavily loaded vehicle or tow a trailer.
- Carry unnecessary weight (approximately 1 mpg [0.4 km/L] is lost for every 400 lb [180 kg] of weight carried).
- Add particular accessories to your vehicle (e.g. bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski racks).
- Drive with the wheels out of alignment.

## DRIVING THROUGH WATER

**Note:** *Driving through deep water above the recommended levels can cause vehicle damage.*

**Note:** *Once through the water, always dry the brakes by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as quickly as dry brakes.*

# Driving Hints



E142667

If driving through deep or standing water is unavoidable, proceed very slowly. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks).


When driving through water, traction or brake capability may be limited. Also, water may enter your engine's air intake and severely damage your engine or your vehicle may stall.


## FLOOR MATS





E142666


### WARNINGS


 Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.


 Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

 Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to ensure mats do not shift out of position.

 Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.

 Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.

 Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.

 Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

## Driving Hints

---

### WARNINGS



Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing loss of control of vehicle.



To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.



To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

---



# Roadside Emergencies

---

## ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

### Vehicles Sold In The U.S.: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The service is available:

- 24-hours, seven days a week.
- for the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner's Manual portfolio.

Roadside assistance will cover:

- a flat tire change with a good spare (except vehicles that have been supplied with a tire inflation kit).
- battery jump start.
- lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility).
- fuel delivery — Independent Service Contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall deliver up to 2.0 gallons (7.5L) of gasoline or 5.0 gallons (18.9L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Fuel delivery service is limited to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- winch out — available within 100 feet (30.5 meters) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- towing — Ford and Lincoln eligible vehicles towed to an authorized dealer within 35 miles (56 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests to be towed to an authorized dealer more than 35 miles (56 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 miles (56 km).

Trailers shall be covered up to \$200 if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the trailer is disabled, but the towing vehicle is operational, the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

### Vehicles Sold In The U.S. : Using Roadside Assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. This card is found in the owner's information portfolio in the glove compartment.

U.S. Ford vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company will reimburse a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 miles (56 km). To obtain reimbursement information, U.S. Ford vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers will be asked to submit their original receipts.

### Vehicles Sold In Canada : Getting Roadside Assistance

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-665-2006.

### Vehicles Sold In Canada : Using Roadside Assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. In Canada, the card is found in the Warranty Guide in the glove box.

Canadian Roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage. Please refer to your Warranty Guide or visit our website at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca) for information on Canadian services and benefits.

# Roadside Emergencies

---

Canadian customers who need to obtain roadside information, call 1-800-665-2006 or visit our website at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca).

## HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

**Note:** *With extended use, the flashers may run down your battery.*



The hazard flasher control is located on the instrument panel by the radio. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

- Press the flasher control and all front and rear direction signals will flash.
- Press the flasher control again to turn them off.

## FUEL CUT-OFF SWITCH

### WARNING



Failure to inspect and if necessary repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle is equipped with a fuel pump shut-off feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shut-off.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle by doing the following:

1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Turn the ignition on.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to re-enable fuel pump.

**Note:** *If your vehicle has the push button start system, press the stop/start button twice to reactivate the fuel system.*

## JUMP-STARTING THE VEHICLE

### WARNINGS



The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks, or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in injury or vehicle damage.



Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.

### Preparing Your Vehicle

**Note:** *Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.*

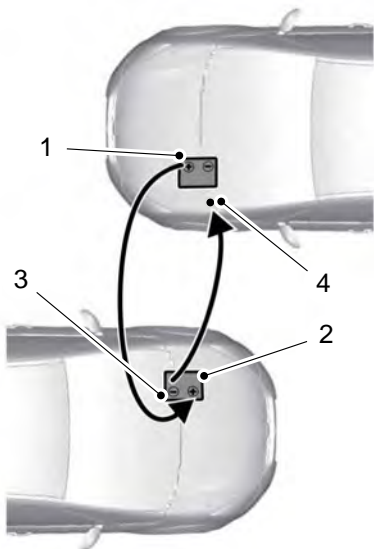
**Note:** *Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.*

1. Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle making sure the two vehicles do not touch. Set the parking brake on both vehicles and stay clear of the engine cooling fan and other moving parts.
2. Check all battery terminals and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that vent caps are tight and level.
3. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect from any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

# Roadside Emergencies

## Connecting the Jumper Cables

**Note:** In the illustration, the vehicle on the bottom is used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.



E142664

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the carburetor or fuel injection system.

**Note:** Do not attach the negative (-) cable to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as grounding points.

## WARNING



Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

Ensure that the cables are clear of fan blades, belts, moving parts of both engines, or any fuel delivery system parts.

## Jump Starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and run the engine at moderately increased speed.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

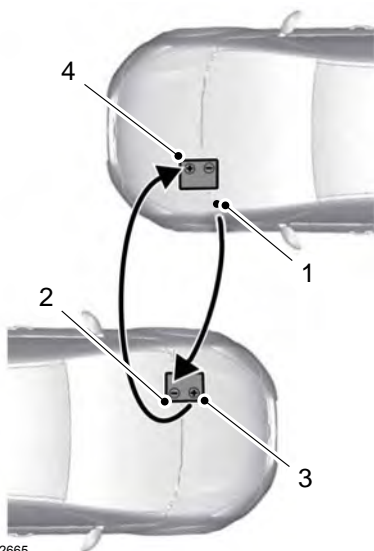
## Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

**Note:** In the illustration, the vehicle on the bottom is used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.

## Roadside Emergencies

---



E142665

1. Remove the jumper cable from the ground metal surface.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.

After the disabled vehicle has been started and the jumper cables removed, allow it to idle for several minutes so the engine computer can relearn its idle conditions.

# Customer Assistance

---

## GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft® parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

### Away From Home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

#### Mailing address

Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48121

#### Telephone

1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
(TDD for the hearing impaired:  
1-800-232-5952)

#### Online

Additional information and resources are available online at [www.fordowner.com](http://www.fordowner.com)

These are some of the items that can be found online:

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State, or Zip Code
- Owner Manuals
- Maintenance Schedules
- Recalls
- Ford Extended Service Plans
- Ford Genuine Accessories
- Service specials and promotions.

In Canada:

#### Mailing address

Customer Relationship Centre  
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4

#### Telephone

1-800-565-3673 (FORD)

#### Online

[www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)

### Additional Assistance

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing authorized dealer.
2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center.

## Customer Assistance

---

In order to help you serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number.
- Your telephone number (home and business).
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located.
- The vehicle's current odometer reading.

In some states, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws. Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt in some states.

In the United States, a warranty dispute must be submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

### IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18000 miles (29 000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time).

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company  
16800 Executive Plaza Drive  
Mail Drop 3NE-B  
Dearborn, MI 48126

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b). You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

## Customer Assistance

---

### **THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)**

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the Getting the Services you need section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE  
4200 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 800  
Arlington, Virginia 22203-1833**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

**Note:** *Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.*

### **UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)**

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

## Customer Assistance

---

The CAMVAP program is a straight forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit [www.camvap.ca](http://www.camvap.ca).

### **GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA**

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact a regional office or owner relations/customer relationship office.

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company/Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the U.S.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY  
FORD EXPORT OPERATIONS & GLOBAL INITIATIVES  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, Michigan 48101  
U.S.A.  
Telephone: (313) 594-4857

For customers in Guam, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI), America Samoa, and the U.S. Virgin Islands, please feel free to call our Toll-Free Number: (800) 841-FORD (3673).

FAX: (313) 390-0804  
Email: [expcac@ford.com](mailto:expcac@ford.com)

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Puerto Rico, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:



## Customer Assistance

---

Ford International Business Development Inc.  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 11957  
Caparra Heights Station  
San Juan, Puerto Rico 00922-1957  
Telephone: (800) 841-FORD (3673)  
FAX: (313) 390-0804  
Email: prcac@ford.com  
www.ford.com.pr

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

Ford Middle East  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 21470  
Dubai, United Arab Emirates  
Telephone: +971 4 3326084  
Toll-Free Number for the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia: 800 8971409  
Local Telephone Number for Kuwait: 24810575  
FAX: +971 4 3327299  
Email: menacac@ford.com  
www.me.ford.com

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company Export Operations & Global Growth Initiatives by emailing expcac@ford.com.

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer employees cannot help you, they can direct you to the nearest Ford affiliate office.

**Customers in the U.S. should call  
1-800-392-3673.**

### ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED  
47911 Halyard Drive  
Plymouth, Michigan 48170  
Attention: Customer Service

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website:

www.helminc.com

(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)

### Obtaining a French Owner's Manual

French Owner's Manual can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, Incorporated using the contact information listed previously in this section.

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)



E142557

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

## Customer Assistance

---

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to:

Administrator  
1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast  
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

### **REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)**

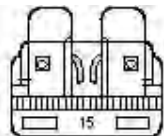
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, using their toll-free number: 1-800-333-0510, or online at:

<http://www.safety.gc.ca/sr7/PCBBPP/index.aspx>

# Fuses

## CHANGING A FUSE

### Fuses



E142430

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

**Note:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

### Standard Fuse Amperage Rating and Color

Color					
Fuse Rating	Mini Fuses	Standard Fuses	Maxi Fuses	Cartridge Maxi Fuses	Fuse Link Cartridge
2A	Grey	Grey	-	-	-
3A	Violet	Violet	-	-	-
4A	Pink	Pink	-	-	-
5A	Tan	Tan	-	-	-
7.5A	Brown	Brown	-	-	-
10A	Red	Red	-	-	-
15A	Blue	Blue	-	-	-
20A	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Blue	Blue
25A	Natural	Natural	-	Natural	Natural
30A	Green	Green	Green	Pink	Pink
40A	-	-	Orange	Green	Green
50A	-	-	Red	Red	Red
60A	-	-	Blue	Yellow	Yellow
70A	-	-	Tan	-	Brown
80A	-	-	Natural	Black	Black

# Fuses


## FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

### Pre-Fuse Box


Your vehicle is equipped with a pre-fuse box located in the engine compartment attached to the positive battery post. This box contains several high current fuses. If replacement of these high current fuses is required, see your authorized dealer.

### Power Distribution Box

#### WARNINGS

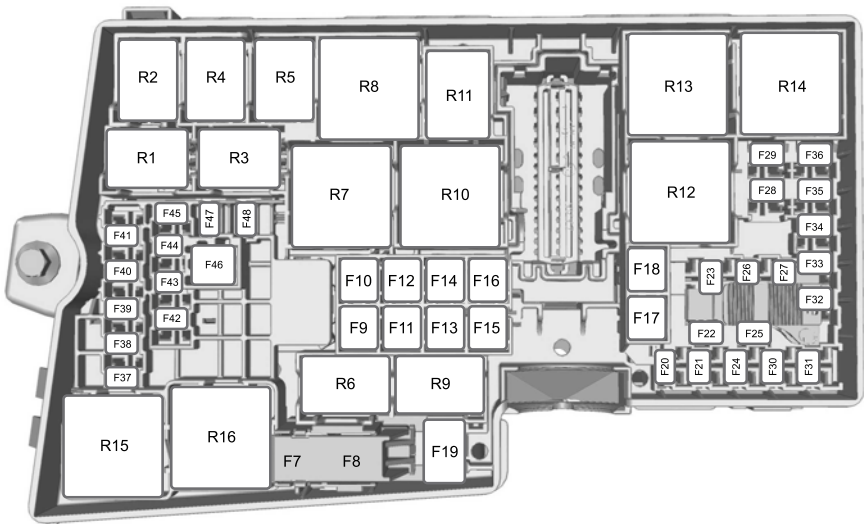
 Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

#### WARNINGS

 To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The power distribution box is located in the engine compartment. It has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, some features will need to be reset. See **Changing the Vehicle Battery** (page 226).



E129925

Lift the release lever at the rear of the cover to remove it.

The high-current fuses are coded as follows:

## Fuses

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
F1	-	Not used
F2	-	Not used
F3	-	Not used
F4	-	Not used
F5	-	Not used
F6	-	Not used
F7	40A**	Anti-lock brake system / Electronic stability program pump
F8	30A**	Electronic stability program valve
F9	-	Not used
F10	40A**	Heater blower motor
F11	-	Not used
F12	30A**	Powertrain control module relay fuse
F13	30A**	Starter relay
F14	25A**	Rear power window (without door control unit)
F15	20A**	Front cigar lighter / Power outlet
F16	25A**	Front power window (without door control unit)
F17	20A**	Rear power outlet
F18	20A**	Center power outlet
F19	5A*	Anti-lock brake system / Electronic stability program 15 feed
F20	15A*	Horn
F21	5A*	Stop light switch
F22	15A*	Battery monitor system
F23	5A*	Relay coils
F24	5A*	Light switch module

## Fuses

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
F25	10A*	Power exterior mirror (without door control unit)
F26	5A*	Keep-alive power
F27	15A*	A/C clutch
F28	10A*	Vehicle power - fuel injector
F29	25A*	Rear window defroster
F30	-	Not used
F31	5A*	Power transfer unit oil cooling fan (Middle East specification)
F32	15A*	Vehicle power
F33	10A*	Vehicle power 2
F34	10A*	Vehicle power 3
F35	15A*	Vehicle power 4
F36	5A*	Active grill shutters
F37	10A*	Occupant classification sensor / Passenger airbag deactivation indicator feed
F38	5A*	Engine control module / Transmission control module ignition feed
F39	5A*	Daytime running lamps / Headlamp control module ignition feed
F40	5A*	Electronic power assist steering 15 feed
F41	20A*	Body control module 15 feed
F42	15A*	Rear wiper
F43	15A*	Headlamp control module supply
F44	15A*	Front fog daytime running lamps
F45	-	Not used
F46	50A**	Smart wiper motor modules
F47	-	Not used
F48	5A*	Keypad

## Fuses

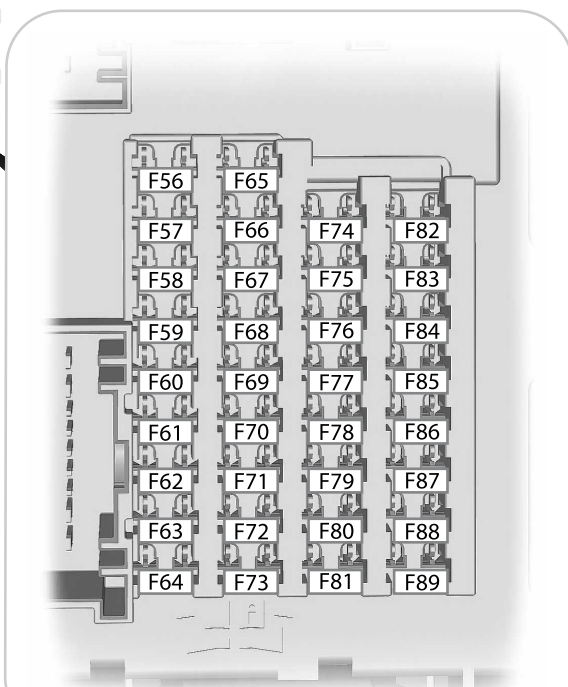
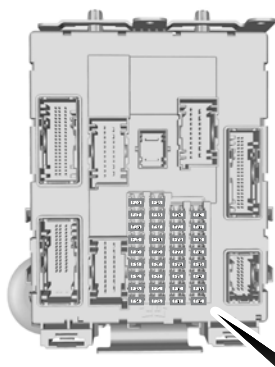
Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
R1	-	Not used
R2	Micro relay	Horn
R3	-	Power transfer unit oil cooling fan (Middle East specification)
R4	-	Front fog daytime running lamps
R5	-	Not used
R6	-	Not used
R7	-	Not used
R8	Mini relay	Delayed accessory relay
R9	-	Not used
R10	Mini relay	Starter relay
R11	Micro relay	A/C clutch
R12	Power relay	Cooling fan
R13	Mini relay	Heater blower
R14	Mini relay	Engine control relay
R15	Power relay	Heated rear window
R16	Power relay	Ignition 15

\*Mini fuses \*\*Cartridge fuses

### Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel

The fuse panel is located on the right side below the glove box.

## Fuses



The fuses are coded as follows:



## Fuses

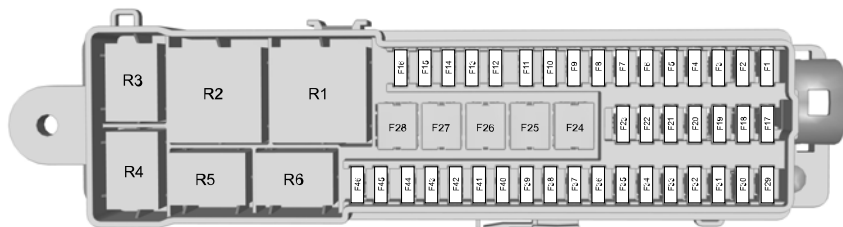
Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
56	20A	Fuel pump supply, Air mass meter
57	-	Not used
58	-	Not used
59	5A	Passive anti-theft transceiver
60	10A	Interior light, Driver door switch pack, Glove box illumination, Overhead console switch bank
61	20A	Cigar lighter, Power point
62	5A	Rain sensor module, Auto-dimming mirror
63	-	Not used
64	-	Not used
65	10A	Liftgate release
66	20A	Driver door unlock supply, Double lock
67	7.5A	SYNC®, Multifunction display, Global positioning system module
68	-	Not used
69	5A	Instrument cluster
70	20A	Central lock and unlock supply
71	10A	Heating control head (manual A/C), Duel electronic automatic temperature control
72	7.5A	Steering wheel module
73	5A	Data link connector
74	15A	High beam headlamp supply
75	15A	Fog lamp supply
76	10A	Reversing lamp supply
77	20A	Windshield washer supply
78	5A	Ignition switch, Start button

## Fuses

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
79	15A	Radio, Navigation DVD player, Touch screen, Hazard light switch, Door lock switch
80	20A	Moonroof supply
81	5A	Radio frequency receiver
82	20A	Windshield washer relay
83	20A	Central locking
84	20A	Drive door unlock supply, Double lock
85	7.5A	Electronic 15 feed
86	10A	Air bag module, Occupant classification system, Passenger air bag deactivation indicator
87	-	Not used
88	-	Not used
89	-	Not used

### Luggage Compartment Fuse Panel

The fuse panel is located in the luggage compartment behind the passenger's side wheel well. Remove the fuse panel cover to gain access to the fuses.



E129927

The fuses are coded as follows:

## Fuses

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
F1	5A	Hands-free liftgate entry module
F2	10A	Keyless vehicle module
F3	5A	Keyless vehicle door handles
F4	25A	Door control unit front left
F5	25A	Door control unit front right
F6	25A	Door control unit rear left
F7	25A	Door control unit rear right
F8	-	Not used
F9	25A	Driver seat motor
F10	5A	Driver seat memory module logic feed
F11	5A	Rear ignition coil feed
F12	-	Not used
F13	-	Not used
F14	-	Not used
F15	-	Not used
F16	-	Not used
F17	-	Not used
F18	-	Not used
F19	-	Not used
F20	-	Not used
F21	-	Not used
F22	-	Not used
F23	25A	Audio amplifier
F24	30A	DC/AC power converter
F25	25A	Power liftgate
F26	40A	Accessories / Trailer tow module 30 feed 1

## Fuses

Fuse/Relay Number	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
F27	-	Not used
F28	-	Not used
F29	5A	Blind spot detection system, Rear view camera with park assist
F30	5A	Parking aid module
F31	-	Not used
F32	5A	DC/AC power converter
F33	-	Not used
F34	20A	Driver seat heater
F35	20A	Passenger seat heater
F36	-	Not used
F37	5A	Moonroof
F38	-	Not used
F39	-	Not used
F40	-	Not used
F41	-	Not used
F42	-	Not used
F43	-	Not used
F44	-	Not used
F45	-	Not used
F46	-	Not used
R1	Power relay	Rear 15 relay
R2	-	Not used
R3	-	Not used
R4	-	Not used
R5	-	Not used
R6	-	Not used

# Maintenance

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of Ford authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

To help you service your vehicle, we provide scheduled maintenance information which makes tracking routine service easy. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 396).

If your vehicle requires professional service, your authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your Warranty Guide to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

## Precautions

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

## Working with the Engine Off

1. Set the parking brake and shift to P (Park).
2. Turn off the engine and remove the key (if equipped).
3. Block the wheels.

## Working with the Engine On

### WARNING



To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

1. Set the parking brake and shift to P (Park).
2. Block the wheels

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD



E142457

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the instrument panel.

## Maintenance



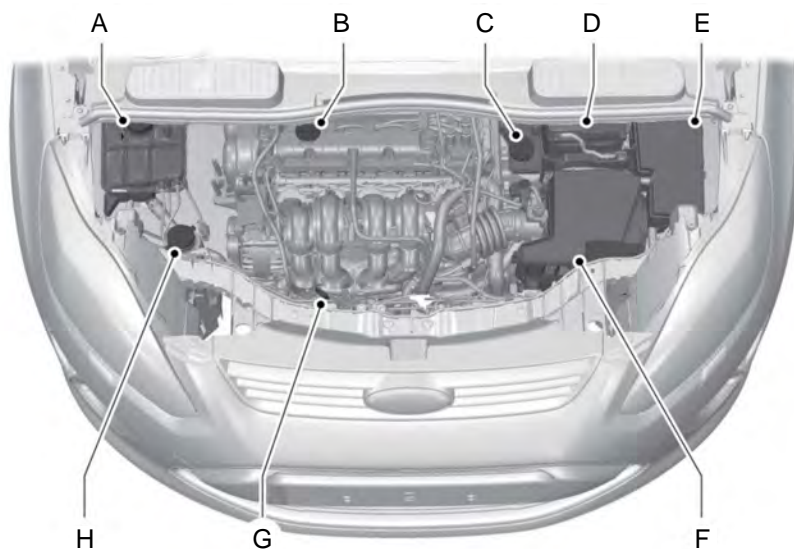
E142458

2. Go to the front of the vehicle and locate the auxiliary latch located under the front of the hood (left of center) and then release it by pushing the auxiliary latch to the right.
3. Open the hood and support it with the prop rod.

To close the hood, lower the hood and allow it to drop from under its own weight for the last 8-11 inches (20-30 centimeters).

**Note:** Make sure that the hood is closed properly.

### UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.6L ECOBOOST®



E142459

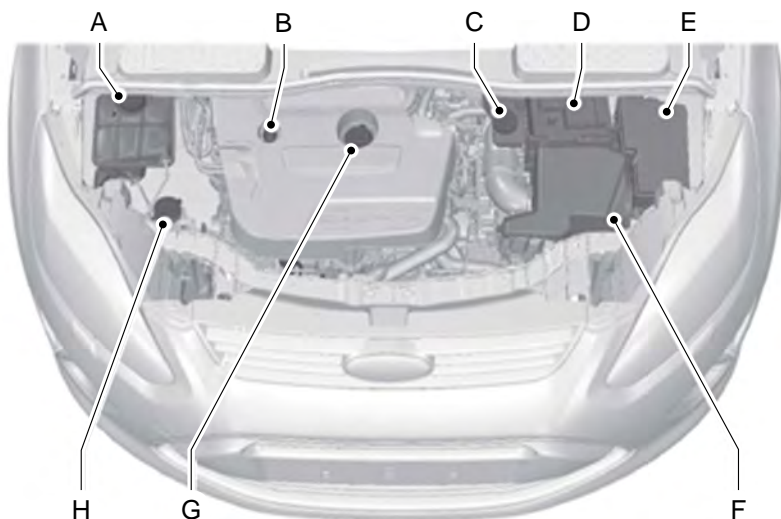
- A Engine coolant reservoir
- B Engine oil filler cap

# Maintenance

---

- C Brake fluid reservoir
- D Battery
- E Power distribution box
- F Air filter assembly
- G Engine oil dipstick
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBOOST®



E146022

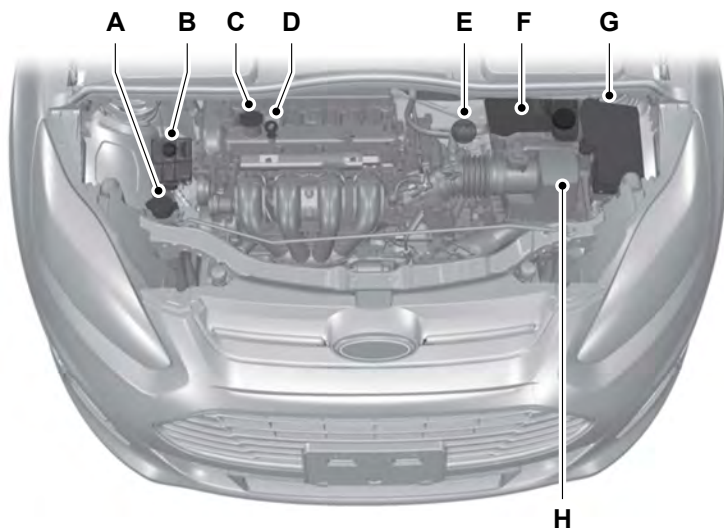
- A Engine coolant reservoir
- B Engine oil dipstick
- C Brake fluid reservoir
- D Battery
- E Power distribution box
- F Air filter assembly

# Maintenance

---

- G Engine oil filler cap
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.5L



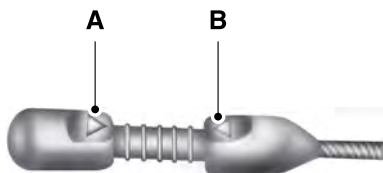
E146023

- A Windshield washer fluid reservoir
- B Engine coolant reservoir
- C Engine oil filler cap
- D Engine oil dipstick
- E Brake fluid reservoir
- F Battery
- G Power distribution box
- H Air filter assembly



# Maintenance

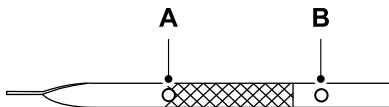
## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.6L ECOBOOST®



E146020

A MIN  
B MAX

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.5L/2.0L ECOBOOST®



E142462

A MIN  
B MAX

## ENGINE OIL CHECK

**Note:** Check the level before starting the engine.

**Note:** Make sure that the level is between the MIN and the MAX marks.

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Turn the engine off and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the level is at the MIN mark, add oil immediately.

## Adding Engine Oil

**Note:** Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

**Note:** Do not add oil further than the MAX mark. Oil levels above the MAX mark may cause engine damage.



E142732

Only use oils certified for gasoline engines by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Council (ILSAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.

# Maintenance

1. Remove the filler cap.
2. Add engine oil that meets the Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 267).
3. Replace the filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

## Resetting the Oil Life Monitoring System

**Note:** Reset the oil life monitoring only after an oil change.

1. Turn the ignition key to the on position. Do not start the engine. For vehicles with push-button start, press and hold the start button for two seconds without pressing the brake pedal. Do not attempt to start the engine.
2. Press both the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time.
3. Keep both pedals fully pressed.
4. After three seconds, the Service: Oil reset in prog. message will be displayed.
5. After 25 seconds, the Service: Oil reset complete message will be displayed.
6. Release both the accelerator and brake pedals.
7. The Service: Oil reset complete message will no longer be displayed.
8. Rotate the key to the off position. For vehicles with push-button start, press the start button to turn the vehicle off completely.

## ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

### Checking the Engine Coolant

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the engine coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 396).

**Note:** Make sure that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks on the coolant reservoir.

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the MAX mark

**Note:** If the level is at the MIN mark, below the MIN mark, or empty, add coolant immediately. See **Adding Engine Coolant** in this chapter.

The coolant concentration should be maintained at 50%.

**Note:** For best results, coolant concentration should be tested with a refractometer such as Rotunda tool ROB75240 available from your dealer. Ford does not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentrations.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable. Do not use engine coolant or antifreeze or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

## Adding Engine Coolant

### WARNINGS



Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, you can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts.



Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure; steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when the cap is loosened slightly.

# Maintenance

---

## WARNINGS



Do not add coolant further than the MAX mark.

**Note:** *Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. This damage would not be covered under your vehicle's warranty.*

**Note:** *During normal vehicle operation, the engine coolant may change color from orange to pink or light red. As long as the engine coolant is clear and uncontaminated, this color change does not indicate the engine coolant has degraded nor does it require the engine coolant to be drained, the system to be flushed, or the engine coolant to be replaced.*

- Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Make sure the correct coolant is used. Mixing of engine coolants may harm your engine's cooling system. The use of an improper coolant may harm engine and cooling system components and may void the warranty. Use prediluted engine coolant meeting the Ford specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 267).
- In case of emergency, a large amount of water without engine coolant may be added in order to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, the cooling system must be drained, chemically cleaned with Motorcraft® Premium Cooling System Flush, and refilled with prediluted engine coolant as soon as possible. Water alone (without engine coolant) can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

- Do not use alcohol, methanol, brine or any engine coolants mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze (coolant). Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.
- Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the engine coolant.

Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure will escape as you unscrew the cap.

Add prediluted engine coolant meeting the Ford specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 267).

Whenever coolant has been added, the coolant level in the coolant reservoir should be checked the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the proper level.

## Recycled Engine Coolant

Ford Motor Company does not recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

Always dispose of used automotive fluids in a responsible manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

# Maintenance

## Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to have a Ford authorized dealer increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% will provide improved freeze point protection. Engine coolant concentrations above 60% will decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- It may be necessary to have a Ford authorized dealer decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- A coolant concentration of 40% will provide improved overheat protection. Engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the corrosion/freeze protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted engine coolant for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

## What you Should Know About Fail-Safe Cooling

If the engine coolant supply is depleted, this feature allows the vehicle to be driven temporarily before incremental component damage is incurred. The “fail-safe” distance depends on ambient temperatures, vehicle load and terrain.

### How Fail-Safe Cooling Works

If the engine begins to overheat, the engine coolant temperature gauge will move to the red (hot) area and:



The coolant temperature warning light will illuminate.



The service engine soon indicator will illuminate.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine will automatically switch to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs the vehicle will still operate. However:

- The engine power will be limited.
- The air conditioning system will be disabled.

Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and the engine will completely shut down, causing steering and braking effort to increase.

Once the engine temperature cools, the engine can be re-started. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

## When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated

### WARNINGS



Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate the vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring the vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, the vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

# Maintenance

---

You have limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, so drive the vehicle with caution. The vehicle will not be able to maintain high-speed operation and the engine will run rough. Remember that the engine is capable of completely shutting down automatically to prevent engine damage, therefore:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine.
2. Arrange for the vehicle to be taken to an authorized dealer.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level and replenish if low.
5. Re-start the engine and take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

**Note:** *Driving the vehicle without repairing the engine problem increases the chance of engine damage. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible.*

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK

**Note:** *Transmission fluid should be checked by an authorized dealer. If required, fluid should be added by an authorized dealer.*

The automatic transmission does not have a transmission fluid dipstick.

Have an authorized dealer check and change the transmission fluid and filter at the correct service interval. See

**Scheduled Maintenance** (page 396). Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, the fluid level should be checked if the transmission is not working properly, (i.e., if the transmission slips or shifts slowly) or if you notice some sign of fluid leakage.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

## BRAKE FLUID CHECK

Fluid levels between the MIN and MAX lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid. If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range, the performance of the system could be compromised; seek service from your authorized dealer immediately.

## POWER STEERING FLUID CHECK

Your vehicle is equipped with an electric power steering (EPS) system. There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.

## FUEL FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

## WASHER FLUID CHECK

### WARNING



If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

**Note:** *The front and rear washer systems are supplied from the same reservoir.*

# Maintenance

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 267).

State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.

## CHANGING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

### WARNINGS



Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.



When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and/or damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

### WARNINGS



Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

Your vehicle is equipped with a Motorcraft® maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.

**Note:** *If your battery has a cover/shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.*

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

It is recommended that the negative battery cable terminal be disconnected from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period of time.

To ensure proper operation of the battery management system (BMS), any electrical devices that are added to the vehicle should not have their ground connection made directly at the negative battery post. A connection at the negative battery post can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

**Note:** *Electrical or electronic accessories or components added to the vehicle by the dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability and may also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

# Maintenance

When a battery replacement is required, the battery should only be replaced with a Ford recommended replacement battery that matches the electrical requirements of the vehicle.

When the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, the automatic transmission must relearn its adaptive strategy. As a result of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This operation is considered normal and will fully update transmission operation to its optimum shift feel.

If the battery has been disconnected or a new battery has been installed, the clock and the preset radio stations must be reset once the battery is reconnected.

**Note:** Always dispose of automotive batteries in a responsible manner. Follow your local authorized standards for disposal. Call your local authorized recycling center to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.

## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



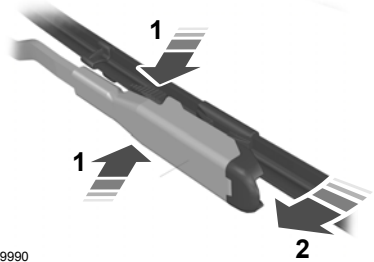
E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

## CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

The wiper arms can be manually moved when the ignition is off. This allows for ease of blade replacement and cleaning under the blades.



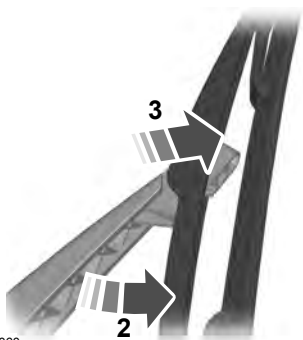
E129990

1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.
2. Press the locking buttons together.
3. Rotate and remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place. Lower the wiper arm and blade back to the windshield. The wiper arms will automatically return to their normal position when the ignition is turned on.

To change the rear blades, do the following:

# Maintenance



E130060

1. Lift the wiper arm.
2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
3. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
4. Remove the wiper blade.
5. Install in the reverse order.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield.

## CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER

### WARNING



To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

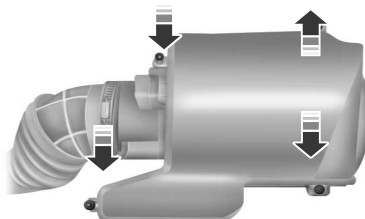
When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 267).

For EcoBoost® equipped vehicles: When servicing the air cleaner, it is important that no foreign material enter the air induction system. The engine and turbocharger are susceptible to damage from even small particles.

Change the air filter element at the proper interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 396).

**Note:** Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.

### 1.6L and 2.0L EcoBoost® Engines

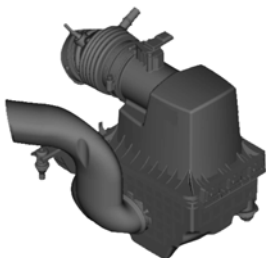


E142710



# Maintenance

## 2.5L Engine



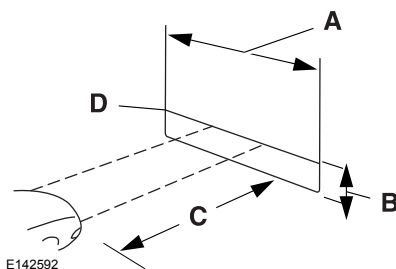
E142711

1. Loosen the screws on the air tube clamp that fasten it to the air filter assembly tray.
2. Separate the clean air tube from the air cleaner.
3. Remove the air cleaner from the vehicle.
4. Loosen the screws that secure the air filter housing cover.
5. Carefully separate the two halves of the air filter housing.
6. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
7. Wipe the air filter housing and cover clean to remove any dirt or debris and to ensure good sealing.
8. Slide the open end of the air filter element in first, below the tab. Then push the closed end cap into the bottom of the tray. The closed end cap should fit inside the groove in the tray. The tab at the end of the closed end cap should be oriented down and fit between the forks on the tray.
9. Replace the air filter housing cover and secure the screws.
10. Reinstall the air cleaner assembly into the vehicle.
11. Reinstall the clean air tube assembly into the air cleaner assembly.
12. Tighten the air tube fastening screws.

## ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

### Vertical Aim Adjustment

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, the alignment of your headlamps should be checked by your authorized dealer.



- A 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- B Center height of lamp to ground
- C 25 feet (7.6 meters)
- D Horizontal reference line

### Vehicles With Halogen Headlamps

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.
2. Measure the height of the headlamp bulb center from the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height.

# Maintenance

**Note:** To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp while adjusting the other.

3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.



E142465

4. On the wall or screen you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the right hand portion of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the high intensity light zone is not at the horizontal reference line, the headlamp will need to be adjusted.



E142467

5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Using a Phillips #2 screwdriver, turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise in order to aim the headlamp. The horizontal edge of the brighter light should touch the horizontal reference line.

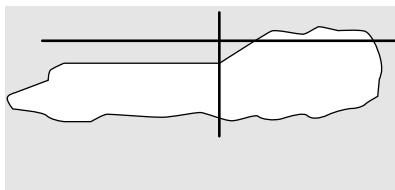
6. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

## Vehicles With High Intensity Discharge Headlamps

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.
2. Measure the height of the headlamp bulb center from the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height.

**Note:** To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp while adjusting the other.

3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.



E142466

4. There is a distinct cut-off (change from light to dark) in the left portion of the beam pattern. The top edge of this cut-off should be positioned two inches (5 centimeters) below the horizontal reference line.

# Maintenance



5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Using a Phillips #2 screwdriver, turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise in order to aim the headlamp.
6. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

## Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim is not required for this vehicle and is non-adjustable.

## REMOVING A HEADLAMP



1. Make sure the headlamp control is in the off position and open the hood.
2. Remove the two screws from the headlamp assembly.

3. Carefully pull the headlamp assembly as far as possible towards the front of the vehicle to disengage it from the lower fixing point.
4. Carefully lift the outer side of the headlamp and remove it.
5. Disconnect the electrical connector.

## CHANGING A BULB

### Lamp Assembly Condensation

Exterior lamps are vented to accommodate normal changes in pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a thin film of mist can form on the interior of the lens. The thin mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation. Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- Presence of thin mist (no streaks, drip marks or droplets).
- Fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable moisture (usually caused by a lamp water leak) are:

- Water puddle inside the lamp.
- Large water droplets, drip marks or streaks present on the interior of the lens.

Take your vehicle to a dealer for service if any of the above conditions of unacceptable moisture are present.

# Maintenance

## Replacing Headlamp Bulbs

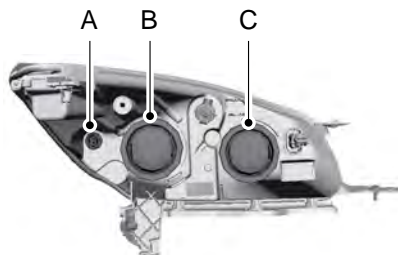
### WARNING



Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb by only its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

**Note:** If the bulb is accidentally touched, it should be cleaned with rubbing alcohol before being used.

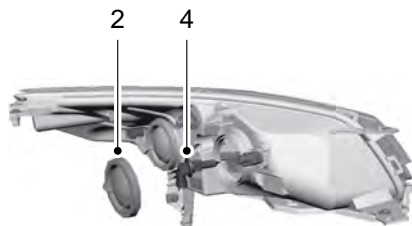
### Headlamp:



E142469

- A Side marker
- B Low beam headlamp
- C High beam headlamp

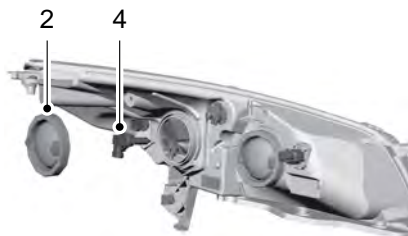
### High beam headlamp:



E142470

1. Remove the headlamp.
2. Remove service cap.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Remove bulb from the headlamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise, then pull it straight out.

### Low beam headlamp:



E142471

1. Remove the headlamp.
2. Remove service cap.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Remove bulb from the headlamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise, then pull it straight out.

Install the new bulbs in reverse order from the steps above. Be sure that the spring clip is not damaged or detached from the headlamp assembly during the replacement procedure.

## Replacing HID Headlamp Bulbs (if

### Equipped)

The low beam headlamps on your vehicle use a high intensity discharge source. These lamps operate at a high voltage. When the bulb is burned out, the bulb and starter capsule assembly must be replaced by your authorized dealer.

# Maintenance

## Replacing Side Marker Bulbs

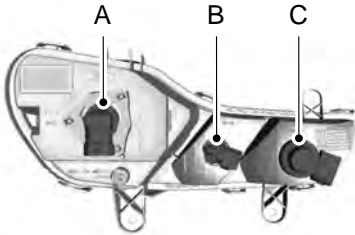


E142772

1. Remove the bulb socket from the headlamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise.
2. Remove the bulb by gently pull the bulb straight out of the socket.

Install the new bulb in reverse order.

## Replacing Fog, Park and Turn Signal Bulbs



E142797

- A Fog Lamp
- B Park Lamp
- C Turn Signal lamp



E142798

1. Remove the screws from the splash shield at the wheel well to gain access to the lamp assembly.



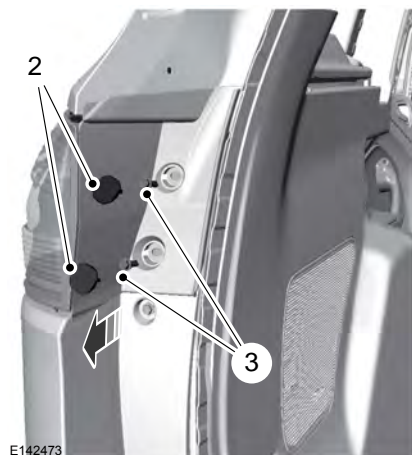
E142799

2. Remove the bulb holder from the lamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Remove the bulb from the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.

Install the new bulbs in reverse order from the steps above.

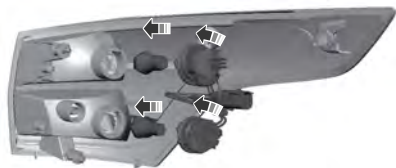
# Maintenance

## Replacing Tail, Brake and Turn Signal Bulbs



E142473

1. Make sure the headlamp control is in the off position and open the liftgate.
2. Remove the two bolt covers using a standard flat tip screwdriver.
3. Remove the two bolts from the lamp assembly.
4. Gently pull the lamp assembly away from the vehicle.



E142475

5. Disconnect the electrical connector.

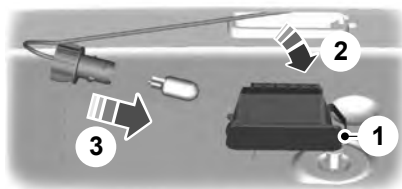
6. Remove the turn signal bulb or the tail and brake bulb by turning the bulb socket counterclockwise. Gently pull the bulb straight out of the socket.

Install the new bulb in reverse order.

## Replacing Reverse Lamp Assembly

For bulb replacement, see your authorized dealer.

## Replacing License Plate Lamp Bulb



E72789

1. Carefully release the spring clip.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. Remove the bulb.

Reverse steps to reinstall bulb.

## Replacing High-Mount Brake Lamp Bulb

Your vehicle is equipped with an LED center high-mount stop lamp located in the spoiler. It is designed to last the life of the vehicle. If replacement is required, see your authorized dealer.

## Maintenance

### BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. Headlamp bulbs must be marked with an authorized "D.O.T." for North America to ensure lamp performance, light brightness and pattern and safe visibility. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb burn time.

Function	Trade number
Headlamps high beam (Halogen)	9005LL
* Headlamps high beam (HID)	H1
Headlamp low beam (Halogen)	H11LL
* Headlamp low beam (HID)	D3S
Sidemarker - front	168
Park lamp - front (H1 Series)	WY5W
Park lamp - front (Low Series)	194
Turn lamp - front (H1 Series)	WY21W
Turn lamp - front (Low Series)	W21W
Fog lamps	H10 (9145)
Tail/brake lamp	3157K
Turn lamp - rear	T20
Backup lamp	921
License plate lamp	W5W
* High-mount brake lamp	LED
* Interior lamps	LED

\* To replace these lamps - see your authorized dealer.

To replace all instrument panel lights - see your authorized dealer

# Vehicle Care

---

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Your Ford or Lincoln authorized dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes.

## CLEANING PRODUCTS

For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42)

Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15)

Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A)

Motorcraft® Dusting Cloth (ZC-24)

Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (U.S. only) (ZC-20)

Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo (Canada only) (CXC-66-A)

Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-101)

Motorcraft® Premium Glass Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-100)

Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid (Canada only) [CXC-37-(A, B, D or F)]

Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (U.S. only) (ZC-32-A)

Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54)

Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover (U.S. only) (ZC-14)

Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23)

Motorcraft® Vinyl Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-93)

Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A)

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft® Detail Wash.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, such as dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash a vehicle that is “hot to the touch” or during exposure to strong, direct sunlight.
- Dry the vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel in order to eliminate water spotting.
- Immediately remove items such as gasoline, diesel fuel, bird droppings and insect deposits because they can cause damage to the vehicle’s paintwork and trim over time. Use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover.
- Remove any exterior accessories, such as antennas, before entering a car wash.

**Note:** *Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage any painted surface; if these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash off as soon as possible.*

## Exterior Chrome

**Note:** *Never use abrasive materials such as steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.*

**Note:** *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels and wheel covers*



# Vehicle Care

---

- Wash the vehicle first, using cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft® Detail Wash.
- Use Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner. Apply the product as you would a wax to clean bumpers and other chrome parts; allow the cleaner to dry for a few minutes, then wipe off the haze with a clean, dry rag.
- Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces and do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces for a period of time exceeding that which is recommended.
- Using other non-recommended cleaners can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.
- Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.
- Always read the instructions before using the products.

## WAXING

- Wash the vehicle first.
- Use a quality wax that does not contain abrasives.
- Do not allow paint sealant to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim, such as grained door handles, roof racks, bumpers, side moldings, mirror housings or the windshield cowl area. The paint sealant will “gray” or stain the parts over time.

## Underbody

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

## Cleaning Plastic Exterior Parts

Use only approved products to clean plastic parts

- For routine cleaning, use Motorcraft® Detail Wash.
- If tar or grease spots are present, use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover.

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Your authorized dealer has touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Take your color code (printed on a sticker in the driver's door jamb) to your authorized dealer to ensure you get the correct color.

## CLEANING THE ENGINE

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal.

When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean. In Canada, use Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.

## Vehicle Care

---

- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.

### CLEANING THE WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

The windows and wiper blades should be cleaned regularly. If the wipers do not wipe properly, substances on the vehicle's glass or the wiper blades may cause squeaking or chatter noise from the blades, and streaking and smearing of the windshield.

To clean these items, follow these tips:

- The windows may be cleaned with a non-abrasive cleaner such as Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner.
- The wiper blades can be cleaned with isopropyl (rubbing) alcohol or Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate in the U.S., or Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid in Canada. Be sure to replace wiper blades when they appear worn or do not function properly.
- Do not use abrasives, as they may cause scratches
- Do not use fuel, kerosene, or paint thinner to clean any parts.

If you cannot remove those streaks after cleaning with the glass cleaner or if the wipers chatter and move in a jerky motion, clean the outer surface of the windshield and the wiper blades using a sponge or soft cloth with a neutral detergent or mild-abrasive cleaning solution. After cleaning, rinse the windshield and wiper blades with clean water. The windshield is clean if beads do not form when you rinse the windshield with water.

**Note:** *Do not use sharp objects, such as a razor blade, to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals, as it may cause damage to the rear window defroster's heated grid lines.*

### CLEANING THE INTERIOR

#### WARNINGS



Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's safety belts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.



On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a collision.

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats, safety belts and seats equipped with side airbags:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner.

## Vehicle Care

- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover. In Canada, use Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

### CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AND INSTRUMENT CLUSTER LENS

#### WARNING



Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp, white cotton cloth, then use a clean and dry white cotton cloth to dry these areas.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect the driver from undesirable windshield reflection.
- Be certain to wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion in order to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.

- Do not use household or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.
- Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.

If a staining liquid like coffee/juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces, clean as follows:

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean, white, cotton cloth.
2. Wipe the surface with a damp, clean, white cotton cloth. For more thorough cleaning, use a mild soap and water solution. If the spot cannot be completely cleaned by this method, the area may be cleaned using a commercially available cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.
3. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, white, cotton cloth and press the cloth onto the soiled area—allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.
4. Remove the soaked cloth, and if it is not soiled badly, use this cloth to clean the area by using a rubbing motion for 60 seconds.
5. Following this, wipe area dry with a clean, white, cotton cloth.

### CLEANING LEATHER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Clean spills and stains as quickly as possible.

## Vehicle Care

---

- For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth. For more thorough cleaning, wipe the surface with a mild soap and water solution. In Canada, use Motorcraft® Vinyl Cleaner. Dry the area with a soft cloth.
- If the leather cannot be completely cleaned using a mild soap and water solution, the leather may be cleaned using a commercially available leather cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.
- To check for compatibility, first test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous part of the leather.
- Do not use household cleaning products, alcohol solutions, solvents or cleaners intended for rubber, vinyl and plastics, or oil/petroleum-based leather conditioners. These products may cause premature wearing or damage to the leather.
- Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims or covers. Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over time.
- Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover.

## VEHICLE STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for an extended period of time (30 days or more), read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

All motor vehicles and their components were engineered and tested for reliable, regular driving. Long term storage under various conditions may lead to component degradation or failure unless specific precautions are taken to preserve the components.

### General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

## CLEANING THE ALLOY WHEELS (IF EQUIPPED)

**Note:** Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels and wheel covers.

Aluminum wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. In order to maintain their shine:

- Clean weekly with Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner. Heavy dirt and brake dust accumulation may require agitation with a sponge. Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water.
- Never apply any cleaning chemical to hot or warm wheel rims or covers.

# Vehicle Care

---

## Body

- Wash vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash vehicles stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up raw or primed metal to prevent rust
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when the vehicle is washed.
- Lubricate all hood, door and trunk lid hinges, and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

## Engine

- The engine oil and filter should be changed prior to storage, as used engine oil contain contaminants that may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days. Run at fast idle until it reaches normal operating temperature
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.

## Fuel system

- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

**Note:** During extended periods of vehicle storage (30 days or more), fuel may deteriorate due to oxidation. Add a quality gas stabilizer product to the vehicle fuel system whenever actual or expected storage periods exceed 30 days. Follow the instructions on the additive label. The vehicle should then be operated at idle speed to circulate the additive throughout the fuel system.

## Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm there are no cooling system leaks, and fluid is at the recommended level.

## Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.
- If storing your vehicle for more than 30 days without recharging the battery, it may be advisable to disconnect the battery cables to ensure battery charge is maintained for quick starting.

**Note:** If battery cables are disconnected, it will be necessary to reset memory features.

## Brakes

- Make sure brakes and parking brake are fully released.

## Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

## Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 feet (8 meters) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

# Vehicle Care

---

## Removing Vehicle From Storage

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check under the hood for any foreign material that may have collected during storage (mice/squirrel nests).
- Check the exhaust for any foreign material that may have collected during storage.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive the vehicle 15 feet (4.5 meters) back and forth to remove rust build-up.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If the battery was removed, clean the battery cable ends and inspect.


Contact your authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.


# Wheels and Tires


## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Notice to utility vehicle and truck owners

#### WARNINGS

 Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from a rollover or other crash you must avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers, drive at safe speeds for the conditions, keep tires properly inflated, never overload or improperly load your vehicle, and make sure every passenger is properly restrained.

 In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. All occupants must wear seat belts and children/infants must use appropriate restraints to minimize the risk of injury or ejection.

 Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.




E145298

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

Study your owner's manual and any supplements for specific information about equipment features, instructions for safe driving and additional precautions to reduce the risk of an accident or serious injury.

### Four-wheel drive system (if equipped)

#### WARNING

 Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

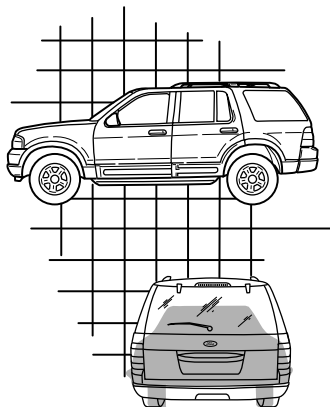
A vehicle equipped with four-wheel drive (when selected) has the ability to use all four wheels to power itself. This increases traction which may enable you to safely drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

For four-wheel drive vehicles, a spare tire of a different size other than the tire provided should never be used. A dissimilar spare tire size (other than the spare tire provided) or major dissimilar tire sized between the front and rear axles could cause the four-wheel drive system to stop functioning and default to front-wheel drive.

# Wheels and Tires

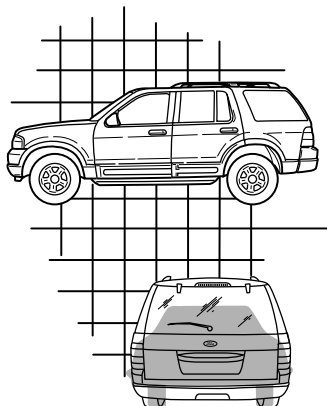
## How your vehicle differs from other vehicles

Sport utility vehicles and trucks can differ from some other vehicles in a few noticeable ways. Your vehicle may be:



E145299

- Higher - to allow higher load carrying capacity and to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.
- Shorter - to give it the capability to approach inclines and drive over the crest of a hill without getting hung up or damaging underbody components. All other things held equal, a shorter wheelbase may make your vehicle quicker to respond to steering inputs than a vehicle with a longer wheelbase.
- Narrower - to provide greater maneuverability in tight spaces, particularly in off-road use.



E145300

As a result of the above dimensional differences, Sport utility vehicles and trucks often will have a higher center of gravity and a greater difference in center of gravity between the loaded and unloaded condition. These differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.



# Wheels and Tires

---

## TIRE CARE

### Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading



E142542

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

**Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A.**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104 (c)(2).

**U.S. Department of Transportation Tire quality grades:** The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

## Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

## Traction AA A B C

### WARNING



The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

## Temperature A B C

### WARNING



The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

# Wheels and Tires

---

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

## Glossary of Tire Terminology

- **Tire label:** A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.
- **Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.
- **Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.
- **Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35 psi [37 psi (2.5 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41 psi [43 psi (2.9 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

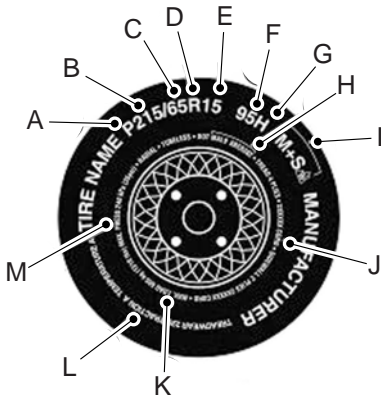
- **kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.
- **PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.
- **Cold inflation pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile (1.6 km).
- **Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.
- **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door
- **Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.
- **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.
- **Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.
- **Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

## Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

# Wheels and Tires

## Information on P Type Tires



E142543

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

**A. P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that may be used for service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either ETRTO (European Tire and Rim Technical Organization) or JATMA (Japan Tire Manufacturing Association).

**B. 215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

**C. 65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

**D. R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

**E. 15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

**F. 95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

**G. H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Letter rating	Speed rating - mph (km/h)
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)

# Wheels and Tires

Letter rating	Speed rating - mph (km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

**Note:** For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

## H. U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):

This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

I. **M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

**AT:** All Terrain, or

**AS:** All Season.

## J. Tire Ply Composition and Material

**Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

K. **Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

## L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:

- **Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
- **Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
- **Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

# Wheels and Tires

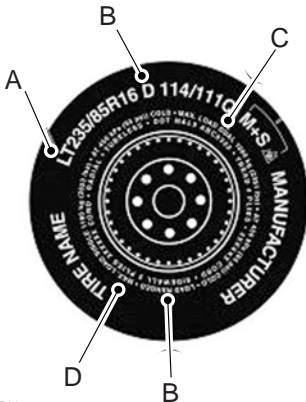
## M. **Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure:**

Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load, radial tubeless, etc.

## **Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires**

**Note:** *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



E142544

LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

A. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for service on light trucks.

## B. **Load Range and Load Inflation**

**Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

## C. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi**

**(kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual; defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

## D. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi**

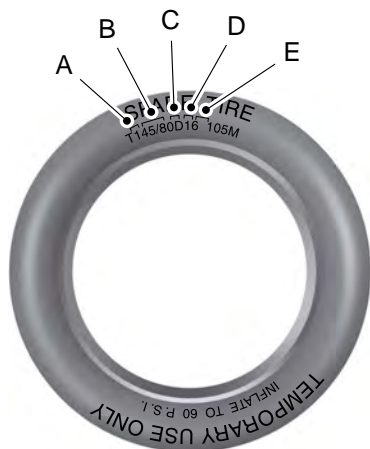
**(kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single; defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

## **Information on T Type Tires**

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

**Note:** *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*

# Wheels and Tires



E142545

T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:

A. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for temporary service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

B. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. **D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire.

**R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

## Location of the Tire Label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.

## Inflating Your Tires

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns

## Wheels and Tires

### WARNING



Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles

### Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure

is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

**Note:** *If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (i.e. driven more than 1 mile [1.6 km]), never bleed or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.*

**Note:** *If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.*

# Wheels and Tires

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.
3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

**Note:** *If you overfill the tire, release air by pressing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.*

4. Replace the valve cap.
5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

**Note:** *Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T type mini-spare tires (refer to the Dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly information for a description): Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For full-size and dissimilar spare tires (refer to the Dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly information for a description): Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.*

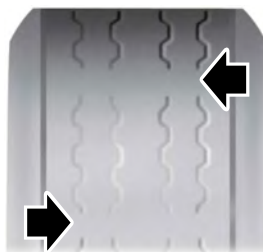
6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.
7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

## Inspecting Your Tires and Wheel Valve Stems

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

## Tire Wear



E142546



# Wheels and Tires

---

When the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm)

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

## Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

## Age

### WARNING



Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure, etc.) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

---

## U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

## Tire Replacement Requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

### WARNINGS



Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not

# Wheels and Tires

## WARNINGS

found on these labels then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.



When mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again

When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

1. Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
2. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
3. Stand at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.
4. Use both eye and ear protection.

For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

## WARNINGS

Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly

**Important:** Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the TPMS indicator is flashing, your TPMS is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your TPMS, or some component of the TPMS may be damaged.

## Safety Practices

### WARNINGS



If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.



Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- Observe posted speed limits
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns

# Wheels and Tires

- Avoid potholes and objects on the road
- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking

## Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

## Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

## Tire Rotation

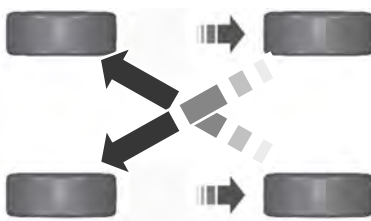
**Note:** If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

**Note:** Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly. A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

**Note:** After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the Scheduled Maintenance chapter) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

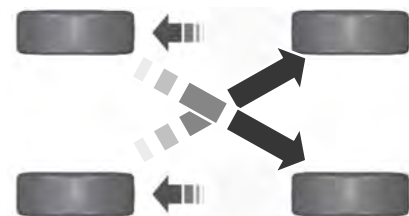
Front-wheel drive vehicles (front tires on the left side of the diagram)



E142547

Four-wheel drive vehicles (front tires on the left side of the diagram)

## Wheels and Tires



E142548

Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

### USING SNOW CHAINS

#### WARNING



Snow tires must be the same size, load index, speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure.

The tires on your vehicle have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires and cables. If you need to use cables, it is recommended that steel wheels (of the same size and specifications) be used, as cables may chip aluminum wheels.

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and traction devices

- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle
- Purchase chains or cables from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions.
- Use 10 mm cables or chains **ONLY** on front axle with 235/55R17 tires.
- Not all S-class snow chains or cables meet these restrictions. Chains of this size restriction will include a tensioning device.
- The snow chains or cables must be mounted in pairs on the front axle.
- Do not use chains or cables on 235/50R18 and 235/45R19 tires.
- Install cables securely, verifying that the cables do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- When driving with tire cables do not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h) or the maximum speed recommended by the chain manufacturer, whichever is less.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the cables rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If this does not work, remove the cables to prevent vehicle damage.
- Remove the cables when they are no longer needed. Do not use cables on dry roads.

If you have any questions regarding snow chains or cables, please contact your authorized dealer.

## Wheels and Tires

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

#### WARNING



The tire pressure monitoring system is NOT a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge, see Inflating your tires in this chapter. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressure could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

The tire pressure monitoring system complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

# Wheels and Tires

---

## Changing Tires with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System



E142549

**Note:** Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Care must be taken when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor

It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge, refer to Inflating your tires in this chapter.

## Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked. Visit [www.checkmytires.org](http://www.checkmytires.org) for additional information.

### When your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the tire pressure monitoring system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel and tire assembly needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full functionality of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel and tire assembly repaired and remounted on your vehicle.

### When you Believe your System is not Operating Properly

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. Please refer to the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

## Wheels and Tires

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	1. Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See Inflating your tires in this chapter. 2. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description on how the system functions, refer to When your temporary spare tire is installed in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Flashing warning light	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description on how the system functions, refer to When your temporary spare tire is installed in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

### When Inflating your Tires

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure

# Wheels and Tires

## How Temperature Affects your Tire Pressure

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase approximately 2 to 4 psi (14 to 28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease approximately 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 30°F (17°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the TPMS as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the TPMS warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. (If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.) Check air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

## CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

### WARNINGS



The use of tire sealants may damage your tire pressure monitoring system and should not be used. However, if you must use a sealant, the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized Ford dealer.



See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 257). for important information. If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function.

**Note:** *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full functionality of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.*

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 257). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the tire pressure monitoring system sensor for damage.

## Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information

### WARNING



Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road wheel and tire assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:



# Wheels and Tires

---

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter T for tire size and may have Temporary Use Only molded in the sidewall.

2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY.

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, **do not:**

- Exceed 50 miles per hour (80 kilometers per hour)
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label.
- Tow a trailer.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire.

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability (if applicable).

3. **Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel**

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, **do not:**

- Exceed 70 miles per hour (113 kilometers per hour).
- Use more than one dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability (if applicable).
- Load leveling adjustment (if applicable).

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly additional caution should be given to:


- Towing a trailer.
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body.
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack.


Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly and seek service as soon as possible.


# Wheels and Tires


## Tire Change Procedure


### WARNINGS

 When one of the front wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent the vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the vehicle is in position **P**.

 To help prevent the vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure the parking brake is set, then block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of the vehicle) to the tire being changed.

 If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.

 Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

 To lessen the risk of personal injury, do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while changing a tire. Do not start the engine when your vehicle is on the jack. The jack is only meant for changing the tire.

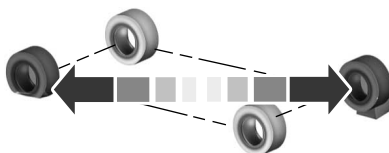
**Note:** *Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.*

1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the gearshift lever in position **P** and turn the engine off.
3. Remove the carpeted wheel cover.



E142550

4. Remove the lug wrench and jack from the foam holder. Then, remove the flat tire retainer strap from the jack base.



E142551

5. Block the diagonally opposite wheel.
6. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.
7. The vehicle jacking points are shown here, and are depicted on the yellow warning label on the jack. **Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.**

## Wheels and Tires



E142552

8. Small arrow-shaped marks on the sills show the location of the jacking points.



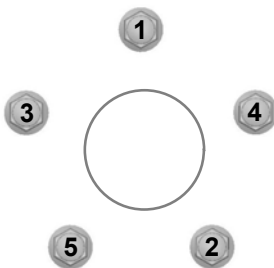
E142553

9. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

**Note:** If equipped with full wheel covers with exposed wheel nuts, the wheel nuts must be removed prior to removing the wheel cover or damage to the wheel cover may occur.

10. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.

11. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.



E75442

12. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. See **Technical Specifications** (page 265).

### Stowing the flat tire

1. Put the jack and lug wrench away. Make sure the jack is fastened so it does not rattle when you drive.
2. Unblock the wheels.

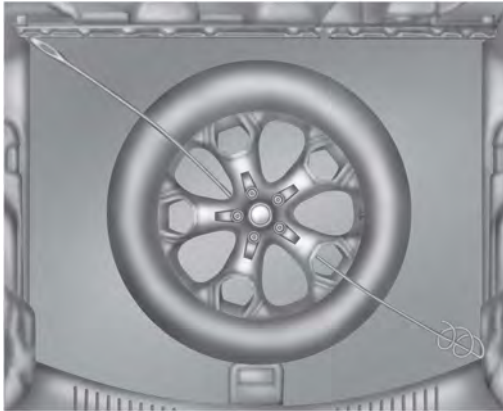
## Wheels and Tires

---

3. Stow the flat tire on the floor in the cargo area. Secure with the flat tire retainer strap by following the next steps:
4. Locate the cargo tie-down near the seatback. Push the loop of the retainer strap through the tie-down. Thread the non-loop end through the loop.



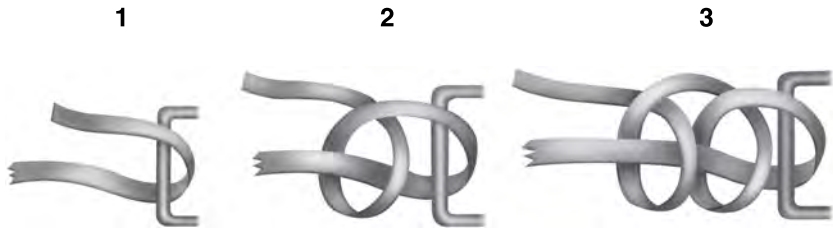
E142906



E142985

5. Weave the retainer strap through the wheel openings.
6. Locate the front cargo tie-down at the opposite corner of the cargo area to the tie-down used in Step 4. Thread the retainer strap through the tie-down and pull tight.
7. Secure by tying a 2-half hitch knot.

# Wheels and Tires



E143746

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Wheel Lug Nut Torque Specifications

#### WARNING



When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Ensure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while the vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

Bolt size	lb-ft (Nm)*
M12 x 1.5	100 (135)

\*Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 miles (160 km) after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).

## Wheels and Tires

---



E145950

A Wheel pilot bore

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

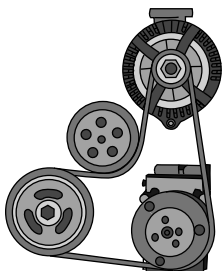
# Capacities and Specifications

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

Engine	1.6L EcoBoost engine	2.0L EcoBoost engine	2.5L engine
Cubic inches	98	122	152
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane	Minimum 87 octane	Minimum 87 octane
Compression ratio	10.0:1	9.3:1	9.7:1
Spark plug gap	0.027-0.031 in. (0.70-0.80 mm)	0.027-0.031 in. (0.70-0.80 mm)	0.049-0.053 in. (1.25-1.35 mm)

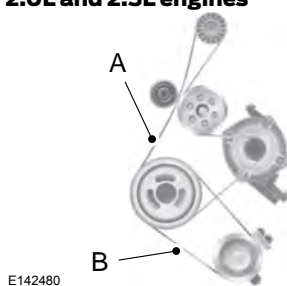
### Drivebelt Routing

#### 1.6L engine



E142479

#### 2.0L and 2.5L engines



E142480

- A Long drivebelt is on first pulley groove closest to engine
- B Short drivebelt is on second pulley groove farthest from engine

## MOTORCRAFT PARTS

Component	1.6L EcoBoost® engine	2.0L EcoBoost® engine	2.5L engine
Air filter element <sup>1</sup>	FA-1908		
Oil filter <sup>2</sup>	FL-910-S		
Battery	BXT-96R-500 BXT-96R-590		

## Capacities and Specifications

Component	1.6L EcoBoost® engine	2.0L EcoBoost® engine	2.5L engine
Spark plugs <sup>3</sup>	AYFS-32-YR		
Cabin air filter	FP70		
Windshield wiper blade	WW-2750 (driver side) WW-2705-WA (passenger side)		

<sup>1</sup> Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.

<sup>2</sup> Only use the specified replacement oil filter. The use of a non-specified oil filter can result in engine damage.

<sup>3</sup> For spark plug replacement, see your authorized dealer. Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 396).

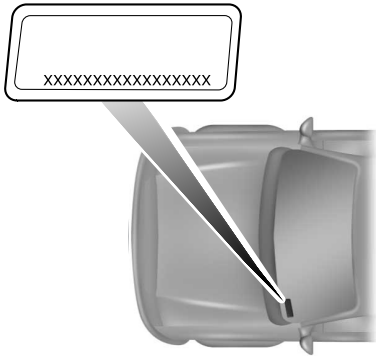
**Note:** Replace the spark plugs with ones that meet Ford material and design specifications for your vehicle, such as Motorcraft® or equivalent replacement parts. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if such spark plugs are not used.



# Capacities and Specifications

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

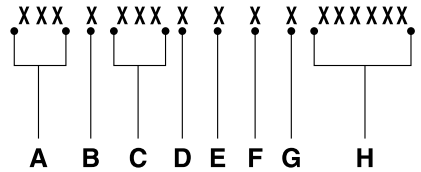
The vehicle identification number is located on the driver side instrument panel.



E142476

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

The Vehicle Identification Number contains the following information:



E142477

- A World manufacturer identifier
- B Brake system, Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, Restraint Devices and their locations
- C Make, vehicle line, series, body type
- D Engine type
- E Check digit
- F Model year
- G Assembly plant
- H Production sequence number

# Capacities and Specifications

## VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL

**MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.**

DATE: XX/XX GVWR: XXXXXLB/ XXXXXKG  
 FRONT GAWR: XXXXL REAR GAWR: XXXXLB  
 XXXXKG WITH XXXXKG WITH  
 XXXX/XXXXXX TIRES XXXX/XXXXXX TIRES  
 XXXX.XX RIMS XXXX.XX RIMS  
 AT XXX kPa/XX PSI COLD AT XXX kPa/XX PSI COLD

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXX  
 TYPE: XXX XXXXX

XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXX XXXX-XXXXXXX-XX

EXT PNT: XX RC: XX DSO: XXXX  
 WB INT TR TP/PS R AXLE TR SPR XXXX  
 XXX XX X XX X XX XXX

## TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATION

**MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.**

DATE: XX/XX GVWR: XXXXXLB/ XXXXXKG  
 FRONT GAWR: XXXXL REAR GAWR: XXXXLB  
 XXXXKG WITH XXXXKG WITH  
 XXXX/XXXXXX TIRES XXXX/XXXXXX TIRES  
 XXXX.XX RIMS XXXX.XX RIMS  
 AT XXX kPa/XX PSI COLD AT XXX kPa/XX PSI COLD

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXX  
 TYPE: XXX XXXXX

XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXX XXXX-XXXXXXX-XX

EXT PNT: XX RC: XX DSO: XXXX  
 WB INT TR TP/PS R AXLE TR SPR XXXX  
 XXX XX X XX X XX XXX

E142478

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, the door latch post, or the edge of the door near the door latch, next to the driver's seating position.

E142806

You can find a transmission code on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table tells you which transmission each code represents.

Description	Code
Six-speed automatic transmission (6F35)	6

## Capacities and Specifications

### TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Item	Capacity	Ford Part Name or Equivalent	Ford Part Number / Ford Specification
Brake fluid <sup>1</sup>	Between MIN and MAX on reservoir	Motorcraft® High Performance DOT 4 Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid	PM-1-C / WSS-M6C65-A2
Door latch, hood latch, auxiliary hood latch, trunk latch, seat tracks.	Not applicable	Multi-Purpose Grease (Lithium grease)	XG-4 or XL-5 or equivalent / ESB-M1C93-B
Lock cylinder	Not applicable	Motorcraft® Penetrating and Lock Lubricant	XL-1 / None
Automatic transmission fluid <sup>2,3</sup>	9.0 qt (8.5L)	Motorcraft® MERCON® LV ATF	XT-10-QLV MERCON® LV
Rear differential (AWD) fluid	2.4 pt (1.15L)	Motorcraft® SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-80W90-QL / WSP-M2C197-A
Power Transfer Unit (PTU) fluid (AWD) <sup>4</sup>	12 oz (0.35L)	Motorcraft® SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-75W140-QL / WSL-M2C192-A
2.0L EcoBoost® engine oil <sup>5,6</sup>	5.7 qt (5.4L)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil (U.S.)</li> <li>- Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Full Synthetic Motor Oil (U.S.)</li> <li>- Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Super Premium Motor Oil (Canada)</li> <li>- Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Synthetic Motor Oil (Canada)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- XO-5W30-QSP (U.S.)</li> <li>- XO-5W30-QFS (U.S.)</li> <li>- CXO-5W30-LSP12 (Canada)</li> <li>- CXO-5W30-LFS12 (Canada)</li> <li>/ WSS-M2C946-A with API Certification Mark</li> </ul>
1.6L EcoBoost engine oil <sup>5,6</sup>	4.3 qt (4.1L)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil (U.S.)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- XO-5W20-QSP (U.S.)</li> <li>- XO-5W20-QFS (U.S.)</li> </ul>

## Capacities and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford Part Name or Equivalent	Ford Part Number / Ford Specification
2.5L engine oil <sup>5, 6</sup>	5.7 qt (5.4L)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Full Synthetic Motor Oil (U.S.)</li> <li>- Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil (Canada)</li> <li>- Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil (Canada)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- CXO-5W20-LSP12 (Canada)</li> <li>- CXO-5W20-LFS12 (Canada)</li> <li>/ WSS-M2C945-A and API Certification Mark</li> </ul>
2.0L EcoBoost engine coolant <sup>7</sup>	9.7 qt (9.2L)	Motorcraft® Orange Antifreeze / Coolant Prediluted	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- VC-3DIL-B (U.S.)</li> <li>- CVC-3DIL-B (Canada)</li> <li>/ WSS-M97B44-D2</li> </ul>
1.6L EcoBoost engine coolant <sup>7</sup>	8.5 qt (8L)		
2.5L engine coolant <sup>7</sup>	9.2 qt (8.7L)		
Windshield washer fluid	Fill as required	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (U.S.)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- ZC-32-A (U.S.)</li> <li>- CXC-37-(A, B, D, and F) (Canada)</li> </ul>

## Capacities and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford Part Name or Equivalent	Ford Part Number / Ford Specification
		Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid (Canada)	/ WSB-M8B16-A2/--
Fuel tank	15.1 gal (57L)	Not applicable	Not applicable

<sup>1</sup>Use only Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 and ISO 4925 Class 6. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause brake system damage.

<sup>2</sup>Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

<sup>3</sup>Automatic transmissions that require Motorcraft® MERCON® LV transmission fluid should only use Motorcraft® MERCON® LV transmission fluid.

Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause transmission damage.

Change the automatic transmission fluid and filter at the correct service interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 396).

<sup>4</sup>See your authorized dealer for fluid level checking or filling.

<sup>5</sup>Use of synthetic or synthetic blend motor oil is not mandatory. Engine oil need only meet the requirements of Ford specification WSS-M2C946-A, SAE 5W-30 (2.0L engine) or WSS-M2C945-A, SAE 5W-20 (1.6L and 2.5L engines) and display the API Certification Mark.

<sup>6</sup>Your engine has been designed to be used with Ford engine oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit while maintaining the durability of your engine.

Using oils other than the one specified can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance, reduced fuel economy and increased emission levels.

<sup>7</sup>Add the coolant type originally equipped in your vehicle.

# Accessories

---

For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your dealer or visit our online store at: [Accessories.Ford.com](http://Accessories.Ford.com) (U.S. only).

Ford Custom Accessories are available for your vehicle through your local Ford or Ford of Canada dealer. Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly dealer-installed Ford Custom Accessories found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories. The accessories will be warranted for whichever provides you the greatest benefit:

- 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km) (whichever occurs first), or
- the remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact your dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

## Exterior style

- Asterisk hood deflectors
- Side window deflectors
- Splash guards
- Custom graphics\*

## Interior style

- Floor mats

## Lifestyle

- Ash cup / smoker's packages
- Soft cargo organizers
- Cargo net\*
- Roof racks and carriers\*

## Peace of mind

- Keyless entry keypad
- Remote start

- Vehicle security systems
- Wheel locks
- Bumper mounted parking assist system\*

\*Ford Licensed Accessories (FLA) are warranted by the accessory manufacturer's warranty. Ford Licensed Accessories are fully designed and developed by the accessory manufacturer and have not been designed or tested to Ford Motor Company engineering requirements. Contact your Ford dealer for details regarding the manufacturer's limited warranty and a copy of the FLA product limited warranty offered by the accessory manufacturer.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Consult your authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems — such as two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms — that are equipped with radio transmitters. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with FCC or CRTC regulations and should be installed only by a qualified service technician.
- Mobile communications systems may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if they are not properly designed for automotive use.

## Accessories

---

- To avoid interference with other vehicle functions, such as anti-lock braking systems, amateur radio users who install radios and antennas onto their vehicle should not locate the amateur radio antennas in the area of the driver's side hood.
- Any non-Ford custom electrical or electronic accessories or components that are added to the vehicle by the authorized dealer or the owner, may adversely affect battery performance and durability, and may also adversely affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

# Ford Extended Service Plan (ESP)

---

## SERVICE PLANS (U.S. only)

More than 32 million Ford and Lincoln owners have discovered the powerful protection of Ford Extended Service Plan. It is the only extended service plan backed by Ford Motor Company, and provides peace of mind protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage.

### Up to 500+ Covered Vehicle Components

There are four, new-vehicle Extended Service Plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your dealer for details.

1. PremiumCare - Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 500 covered components, this plan is so complete that we generally only discuss what's not covered!
2. ExtraCare - Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.
3. BaseCare - Covers 84 components.
4. PowertrainCare - Covers 29 critical components.

Ford Extended Service Plan is honored by all Ford and Lincoln Dealers in the U.S. and Canada. It is the only extended service plan authorized and backed by Ford Motor Company. That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service anywhere you go.
- Factory-trained technicians.
- Ford Authorized Parts used with every covered repair.

### Rental Car Reimbursement

If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including Bumper-to-Bumper warranty repairs, or manufacturer's recalls.

## Transferable Coverage

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford Extended Service Plan coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. Whenever you're ready to sell your car, prospective buyers may feel better about taking a risk on your used vehicle. Ford Extended Service Plan may add resale value!

Plus, exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Out-of-fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Destination assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage and emergency transportation.

### Ford Extended Service Plan Can Quickly Pay for Itself

One service bill – the cost of parts and labor – can easily exceed the price of your Ford Extended Service Plan Service Contract. With a Ford Extend Service Plan, you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

### Avoid the Rising Cost of Properly Maintaining Your Vehicle!

Ford Extended Service Plan also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers items that routinely wear out.

The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about affording your vehicle maintenance. It covers regular checkups, routine inspections, preventive care and replacement of items that require periodic attention for normal wear:

- Wiper blades
- Spark plugs (except California)
- Clutch disc



## Ford Extended Service Plan (ESP)

- Brake pads and linings
- Shock absorbers
- Belts and hoses

Contact your selling Ford or Lincoln dealership today so they can customize a Ford Extended Service Plan that fits your driving lifestyle and budget.

### Interest Free Finance Options Available

Take advantage of our installment payment plan, just a 10% down payment will provide you with an affordable no interest, no-fee payment opportunity.

### For More Information

PROTECT YOURSELF FROM THE RISING COST OF VEHICLE REPAIRS WITH A FORD EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN.

To learn more, call our Ford ESP specialists at 800-367-3377, and don't forget to ask about our interest free payment program, allowing you all the security and benefits Ford ESP has to offer while paying over time. your pre-approved with no credit checks, no hassles!

Or, complete the information below and mail to:

Ford ESP  
P.O. Box 8072  
Royal Oak, MI 48068-0039

<b>Name (PLEASE PRINT)</b>		
<b>ADDRESS</b>	<b>APT.#</b>	
<b>CITY</b>	<b>STATE</b>	<b>ZIP</b>
<b>E-MAIL</b>		

### SERVICE PLANS (CANADA ONLY)

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Ford Extended Service Plan. Ford Extended Service Plan is the only service contract backed by Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Ford Extended Service Plan provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items

- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires
- Roadside Assistance benefits

There are several Ford Extended Service Plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental.

## Ford Extended Service Plan (ESP)

---

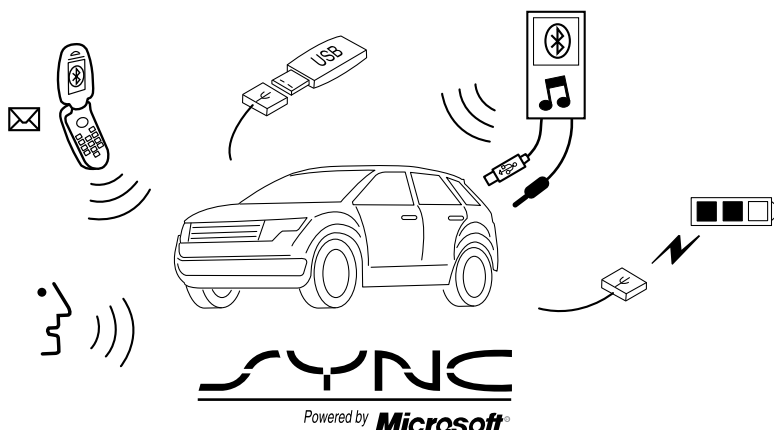
When you purchase Ford Extended Service Plan, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada and the United States, provided by a network of participating Ford Motor Company dealers. The Lincoln Maintenance Protection Plan is honored at authorized Lincoln dealers.

**Note:** *Repairs performed outside of Canada and the United States are not eligible for Ford Extended Service Plan coverage.*

This information is subject to change.

For more information, visit your local Ford of Canada dealer or [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca) to find the Ford Extended Service Plan that is right for you.

## GENERAL INFORMATION



E142598

SYNC is an in-vehicle communications system that works with your Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone and portable media player. This allows you to:

- make and receive calls
- access and play music from your portable music player
- use 911 Assist™, Vehicle Health Report and SYNC Services (Traffic, Directions & Information) (if equipped)
- access phonebook contacts and music using voice commands
- stream music from your connected phone
- text message

- use the advanced voice recognition system
- charge your USB device (if your device supports this).

Make sure that you review your device's user guide before using it with SYNC.

### Support

The SYNC support team is available to help you with any questions you cannot answer on your own.

Monday-Saturday, 8:30 am-8:00 pm EST.

In the United States, call: 1-888-270-1055.

In Canada, call: 1-800-565-3673.

Times are subject to change due to holidays.

## Driving Restrictions

For your safety, certain features are speed-dependent and restricted when your vehicle is traveling over 3 mph (5 km/h).

## Safety Information

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC:

- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Carefully place cords and cables where they cannot be stepped on or interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in the vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. Refer to your device's user guide for further information.
- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See your authorized dealer.

## Privacy Information

When a mobile phone is connected to SYNC, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that is linked to that mobile phone. This profile is created in order to offer you more mobile features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your mobile phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your mobile phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The mobile profile, media device index, and development log will remain in the vehicle unless you delete it and are generally accessible only in the vehicle when the mobile phone or media player is connected. If you no longer plan to use the system or the vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information.

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to the vehicle's SYNC module. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada. For further privacy information, see the sections on 911 Assist (if equipped), Vehicle Health Report (if equipped), and Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped).

## USING VOICE RECOGNITION

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you.

## Helpful Hints

Make sure the interior of the vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.

After pressing the voice icon, wait until after the tone sounds and "Listening" appears before saying a command. Any command spoken prior to this does not register with the system.

Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.

At any time you can interrupt the system while it is speaking by pressing the voice icon.

## Initiating a Voice Session



Push the voice icon; a tone sounds and "Listening" appears in the display. Say any of the following:

Say	If You Want To
"Bluetooth audio"	Stream audio from your phone.
"Cancel"	Cancel the requested action.
"Line in"	Access the device connected to the auxiliary input jack.
"Mobile apps" *	Access mobile applications.
"Phone"	Make calls.
"Services" *	Access the SYNC Services portal.
"SYNC"	Return to the main menu.
"USB"	Access the device connected to your USB port.
"Vehicle health report" *	Run a vehicle health report.

Say	If You Want To
"Voice settings"	Adjust the level of voice interaction and feedback.
"Help"	Hear a list of voice commands available in the current mode.

\* If equipped, U.S. only

## System Interaction and Feedback

The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings). You can customize the voice recognition system to provide more or less instruction and feedback.

The default setting is to a higher level of interaction in order to help you learn to use the system. You can change these settings at any time.

### Adjusting the Interaction Level



Push the voice icon. Say "Voice settings" when prompted, then any of the following:

When You Say	The System
"Interaction mode advanced"	Provides less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
"Interaction mode standard"	Provides more detailed interaction and guidance.

The system defaults to the standard interaction mode.

Confirmation prompts are short questions the system asks when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request. For example, the system may ask "Phone, is that correct?".

When You Say	The System
"Confirmation prompts off"	Makes a best guess from the command; you may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.
"Confirmation prompts on"	Clarifies your voice command with a short question.

The system creates candidate lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice command. When turned on, you may be prompted with as many as four possibilities for clarification.

For example, say "Say 1 after the tone to call John Doe at home. Say 2 after the tone to call Johnny Doe on mobile. Say 3 after the tone to call Jane Doe at home." You could also say "Say 1 after the tone to play John Doe, Say 2 after the tone to play Johnny Doe."

When You Say	The System
"Media candidate lists off"	Makes a best guess from the media candidate list; you may still occasionally be asked questions.
"Media candidate lists on"	Clarifies your voice command for media candidates.
"Phone candidate lists off"	Makes a best guess from the phone candidate list; you may still occasionally be asked questions.
"Phone candidate lists on"	Clarifies your voice command for phone candidates

## USING SYNC® WITH YOUR PHONE

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your mobile phone's functionality. At a minimum, most mobile phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call
- Ending a call
- Using privacy mode
- Dialing a number
- Redialing
- Call waiting notification
- Caller ID

Other features such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download are phone-dependent features. To check your phone's compatibility, refer to your phone's user manual and visit [www.SYNCMYRide.com](http://www.SYNCMYRide.com) or [www.syncmaroute.ca](http://www.syncmaroute.ca).

### Pairing a Phone for the First Time

**Note:** SYNC can support downloading up to approximately 2000 entries per Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone.

**Note:** Make sure the vehicle ignition and radio are turned on and the transmission is in position **P**.

**Note:** To scroll through the menus, press the up and down arrows on your audio system.

Wirelessly pairing your phone with SYNC allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

1. Press the phone button; when the display indicates no phone is paired, press OK.
2. When **Add Bluetooth Device** appears, press OK.
3. When **Find SYNC** appears in the display, press OK.
4. Put your phone into Bluetooth discovery mode. Refer to your phone's user guide if necessary.
5. When prompted on your phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by SYNC in the radio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful

Depending on your phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current phone as the primary phone (the phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up), downloading your phone book, etc.

## Pairing Subsequent Phones

**Note:** Make sure the vehicle ignition and radio are turned on and the transmission is in position **P**.

## Phone Voice Commands

"PHONE"	
"Call <name>" <sup>1</sup>	"Go to privacy"
"Call <name> at home" <sup>1</sup>	"Hold"
"Call <name> at work" <sup>1</sup>	"Join"
"Call <name> in office" <sup>1</sup>	"Menu" <sup>2,4</sup>
"Call <name> on mobile OR cell" <sup>1</sup>	"Phone book <name>" <sup>2</sup>
"Call <name> on other" <sup>1</sup>	"Phone book <name> at home" <sup>2</sup>

**Note:** To scroll through the menus, press the up and down arrows on your audio system.

1. Press the phone button and scroll until **System Settings** is selected.
2. Press OK and scroll until **Bluetooth Devices** is selected, then press OK.
3. Scroll until **Add Bluetooth Device** is selected, then press OK.
4. When **Find SYNC** appears in the display, press OK.
5. Put your phone into Bluetooth discovery mode. Refer to your phone's user guide if necessary.
6. When prompted on your phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by SYNC in the radio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

The system then prompts with questions such as if you would like to set the current phone as the primary phone (the phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up), download your phone book, etc.



<b>"PHONE"</b>	
"Call history incoming" <sup>2</sup>	"Phone book <name> at office" <sup>2</sup>
"Call history missed" <sup>2</sup>	"Phone book <name> at work" <sup>2</sup>
"Call history outgoing" <sup>2</sup>	"Phone book <name> on mobile OR cell" <sup>2</sup>
"Connections" <sup>2</sup>	"Phone book <name> on other" <sup>2</sup>
"Dial" <sup>1,3</sup>	

<sup>1</sup> These commands do not require you to say "Phone" first.

<sup>2</sup> These commands are not available until phone information is completely downloaded using Bluetooth.

<sup>3</sup> See **Dial** table below.

<sup>4</sup> See **Menu** table below.

**Phone book commands:** When you ask SYNC to access a phone book name, number, etc., the requested information appears in the display to view. Press the phone button and say "Call" to call the contact.

<b>"DIAL"</b>
"411 (four-one-one)", "911" (nine-one-one), etc.
"700" (seven hundred)
"800" (eight hundred)
"900" (nine hundred)
"Pound", "Slash" (#, /)
"Number <0-9>"
"Asterisk" (*)
"Clear" (deletes all entered digits)
"Delete" (deletes one digit)
"Plus"
"Star"

**Note:** To exit dial mode, press and hold the phone button or press Menu to go to the Phone menu.

"MENU"
"(Phone) connections"
"(Phone) settings (message) notification off"
"(Phone) settings (message) notification on"
"(Phone) settings (set) phone ringer"
"(Phone) settings (set) ringer 1"
"(Phone) settings (set) ringer 2"
"(Phone) settings (set) ringer 3"
"(Phone) settings (set) ringer off"
"Battery"
"Phone name"
"Signal"
"Text message inbox"
Words in ( ) are optional and do not have to be spoken for the system to understand the command.

## Making Calls

Press the voice icon and when prompted say:

1. Say "Call <name>" or "Dial", then the desired number.
2. When the system confirms the number, say "Dial" again to initiate the call.

To erase the last spoken digit, say "Delete" or press the left arrow button. To erase all spoken digits, say "Clear" or press and hold the left arrow button.

To end the call, press and hold the phone button.

## Receiving Calls

When receiving a call, you can:

- **Answer** the call by pressing the phone button.
- **Reject** the call by pressing and holding the phone button.
- **Ignore** the call by doing nothing.

## Phone Options during an Active Call

During an active call, you have additional menu features which become available such as putting a call on hold, joining calls, etc. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options.

To access:

- Press **Menu** during an active call.
- When **Active Call Menu** is selected, press OK.
- Scroll to cycle through the following options:

When You Select	You Can
Mute Call?	Mute the call.
Privacy	Switch a call from an active hands-free environment to your mobile phone for a more private conversation. Press OK when <b>Privacy on/off</b> appears. (The display indicates In Privacy and the system transfers your call.)
Call Hold	Put an active call on hold. Press OK when <b>Hold on/off</b> appears. To answer another call at this time, press the phone button.
Enter Tones	Enter "tones" such as numbers for passwords. Scroll until the desired number appears in the display, then press OK; a tone sounds as confirmation. Repeat as necessary.
Join Calls	Join two separate calls. (SYNC supports a maximum of three callers on a multi-party/conference call.) 1. Press the phone button. 2. Access the desired contact through SYNC or use voice commands to place the second call. Once actively in the second call, press <b>Menu</b> . 3. Scroll until <b>Join Calls</b> appears and press OK. Press OK again when <b>Join Calls?</b> appears.
Phonebook	Access your phonebook contacts. 1. Press OK to select, then scroll through your phonebook contacts. 2. Press OK again when the desired selection appears in the display. 3. Press the phone button.
Call History	Access your call history log. 1. Press OK to select, then scroll through your call history options (incoming, outgoing or missed). 2. Press OK when the desired selection appears in the display. 3. Press the phone button to call the selection.
Return	Exit the current menu.

## Accessing Features through the Phone Menu

The phone menu allows you to redial a number, access your call history and phone book and send text messages as well as access phone and system settings. You can also access advanced features such as 911 Assist™, Vehicle Health Report and SYNC Services.

1. Press the phone button to enter the Phone menu.
2. Scroll to cycle through:

When You Select	You Can
Phone Redial	Redial the last number called (if available). Press OK to select, then press OK again to confirm.
Call History <sup>1</sup>	<p>Allows you to access any previously dialed, received or missed calls while your phone has been connected to the system.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press OK to select.</li> <li>2. Scroll to select from <b>Call History Incoming</b>, <b>Call History Outgoing</b> or <b>Call History Missed</b>. Press OK make your selection.</li> <li>3. Press OK or the phone button to call the desired selection.</li> </ol> <p>The system attempts to automatically re-download your phone book and call history each time your phone connects to SYNC (if the auto download feature is on and your Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone supports this feature).</p>
Phonebook <sup>1,2</sup>	<p>Allows you to access your downloaded phonebook.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press OK to confirm and enter. If your phonebook has fewer than 255 listings, they appear alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more, they are organized into alphabetical categories.</li> <li>2. Scroll until the desired contact appears, then press OK.</li> <li>3. Press OK or the phone button.</li> </ol>
Text Message <sup>1</sup>	Enables you to send, download and delete text messages.
Phone Settings <sup>1</sup>	Allows you to view your phone's status, set ring tones, select your message notification, change phone book entries and automatically download your mobile phone among other features.
SYNC Services <sup>3</sup>	Access the SYNC Services portal where you can request various types of information, traffic reports and directions.

When You Select	You Can
911 Assist <sup>4</sup>	Place an emergency call to a 911 operator for you after an accident (if the feature is used properly).
Vehicle Health Report <sup>3</sup>	Create and receive a diagnostic report card on your vehicle.
Mobile Apps <sup>3</sup>	Interact with SYNC-capable mobile applications on your smartphone.
System Settings	Access <b>Bluetooth Devices</b> menu listings (add, connect, set as primary, on/off, delete) as well as <b>Advanced</b> menu listings (prompts, languages, defaults, master reset, install application and system information).
Exit Phone Menu	Exit the phone menu by pressing OK.

<sup>1</sup> This is a phone-dependent feature.

<sup>2</sup> This is a phone-dependent and speed-dependent feature.

<sup>3</sup> If equipped, U.S. only.

<sup>4</sup> If equipped, U.S. and Canada only.

## Text Messaging

**Note:** *This is a phone-dependent feature.*

SYNC allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages. The system can also read incoming text messages to you so that you do not have to take your eyes off the road.

### Receiving a Text Message

**Note:** *This is a phone-dependent feature. Your phone must support downloading text messages using Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.*

**Note:** *Forwarding a text message is a speed-dependent feature and can only be done when the vehicle is traveling at 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.*

**Note:** *Only one recipient is allowed per text message.*

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the display indicates you have a new message. You have these options:

- Press the voice button, wait for the prompt and say "Read message" to have SYNC read the message to you.
- Press OK to receive and open the text message or do nothing and the message goes into your text message inbox. Press OK again and SYNC reads your message aloud as you are not able to view the message. You can then also choose whether you'd like to reply or forward the message.
- Press OK and scroll to choose between:
  - **Reply to Text Message:** Press OK to access and then scroll through the list of pre-defined messages to send.
  - **Forward Text Message:** Press OK to forward the message to anyone in your **Phonebook** or **Call History**. You can also choose Enter Number.

## **Sending, Downloading and Deleting Your Text Messages**

Text messaging is a phone-dependent feature. If your phone is compatible, SYNC allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages.

1. Press the phone button.
2. Scroll until **Text Message** appears, then press OK.

Scroll to select from the following options:

- **Send Text Message?** enables you to send a new text message based on a pre-defined set of 15 messages.
- **Download Unread Msgs** allows you to download your unread messages (only) to SYNC. To download the messages, press OK to select. The display indicates your messages are being downloaded. When complete, SYNC takes you to your inbox.
- **Delete All Messages?** allows you to delete current text messages from SYNC (not your phone). To delete the messages, press OK to select. The display indicates when all your text messages have been deleted and SYNC returns you to the text message menu
- **Return** exits the current menu when you press OK.

When you select **Send Text Message?** (and your phone supports this feature), you have the following choices of pre-defined messages:

- Be there in 10 minutes
- Be there in 20 minutes
- Call me
- Call U later
- Can't talk right now
- Can't wait to see you
- I love you
- I need more directions
- I'm stuck in traffic
- No
- Thanks
- Too funny
- Where R you?
- Why?
- Yes

To send the message:

1. Press OK when the desired selection is in the display. The system now needs to know who to send the message to.
2. Scroll to cycle through **Phonebook** or **Call History** entries. You can also select **Enter Number** to audibly enter the desired number.
3. Press OK to enter the desired menu and scroll to select the specific contact.
4. Press OK when the contact appears and press OK again to confirm when the system asks if you would like to send the message. Each text message is sent with the following signature: "This message was sent from my <Ford or Lincoln>".

## Accessing Your Phone Settings

These are phone-dependent features. Your phone settings allow you to access and adjust features such as your ring tone, text message notification, modify your phone book and also set up automatic download.

1. Press the phone button.
2. Scroll until **Phone Settings** appears, then press OK.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

When You Select	You Can
Phone Status	See the provider, name, signal power, battery power and roaming status of your connected phone. Press OK to select and scroll to view the information. When done, press OK again to return to the phone status menu.
Set Ringer	Select which ring tone sounds during an incoming call (one of the system's or your phone's). 1. Press OK to select and scroll to hear <b>Ringer 1, Ringer 2, Ringer 3</b> and <b>Phone Ringer</b> . 2. Press OK to select. If your phone supports in-band ringing, your phone's ringer sounds when <b>Phone Ringer</b> is chosen.
Message Notification	Have the option of hearing an audible tone to notify you when a text message arrives. 1. Press OK to select and scroll between <b>Message Notification On</b> or <b>Message Notification Off</b> . 2. Press OK to select.
Modify Phonebook	Modify the contents of your phone book (i.e. add, delete, download). Press OK to select and scroll between: <b>Add Contacts:</b> Press OK to add more contacts from your phone book. "Push" the desired contact(s) on your phone. Refer to your phone's user guide on how to "push" contacts.

When You Select	You Can
	<p><b>Delete Phonebook:</b> Press OK to delete the current phone book and call history. When <b>Delete Phonebook</b> appears, press OK to confirm. SYNC takes you back to the <b>Phone Settings</b> menu.</p> <p><b>Download Phonebook:</b> Press OK to select and press OK again when <b>Confirm Download?</b> appears.</p>
Auto Download	<p>Automatically download your phone book each time your phone connects to SYNC. (Downloading times are phone-dependent and quantity-dependent.)</p> <p>Press OK to select. When <b>Auto Download On?</b> appears, press OK to have your phonebook automatically downloaded each time. (When auto download is on, any changes, additions or deletions saved since your last download are deleted.)</p> <p>Select <b>Off</b> to NOT download your phonebook every time your phone connects to SYNC. Your phonebook, call history and text messages can only be accessed when your specific phone is connected to SYNC.</p>
Return	Exit the current menu.

## System Settings

This menu provides access to your **Bluetooth Devices** and **Advanced** menu features. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options.

The **Bluetooth Devices** menu allows you to add, connect and delete devices, set a phone as "primary" as well as turn your Bluetooth feature on and off.

The **Advanced** menu allows you to access and set prompts, languages, defaults, perform a master reset, install an application and view system information.

## Bluetooth Devices Menu Options

1. Press the phone button to enter the Phone menu
2. Scroll until **System Settings** appears, then press OK.
3. Scroll until **Bluetooth Devices** appears, then select OK.
4. Scroll to select from the following options:

If You Select	You Can
Add Bluetooth Device*	<p>Pair additional phones to the system.</p> <p>1. Press OK to select, then again when <b>Find SYNC</b> appears in the display.</p>



If You Select	You Can
	<p>2. Follow the directions in your phone's user guide to put your phone into discovery mode. A six-digit PIN appears in the display.</p> <p>3. When prompted on your phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by SYNC.</p> <p>4. When <b>Set as Primary Phone?</b> appears, press OK. Scroll to toggle between Yes and No, then press OK.</p> <p>5. Depending on the functionality of your phone, you may be asked additional questions (i.e. if you would like to download your phonebook). Scroll and use OK to select your responses.</p>
Connect Bluetooth Device	<p>Connect a previously paired Bluetooth-enabled phone. (Only one device can be connected at a time. When another phone is connected, the previous one is disconnected.)</p> <p>1. Press OK to select and view a list of previously paired phones.</p> <p>2. Scroll until the desired device is chosen, then press OK to connect the phone.</p>
Set as Primary Phone?	<p>Set a previously paired phone as your primary phone. Press OK to select and scroll to select the desired phone. Press OK to confirm.</p> <p>SYNC attempts to connect with the primary phone at every ignition cycle. When a phone is selected as primary, it appears first in the list and is marked with an *</p>
Set Bluetooth On/Off	<p>Turn the Bluetooth feature on and off. Press OK and scroll to toggle between <b>On</b> and <b>Off</b>. When the desired selection is chosen, press OK. (Turning Bluetooth off disconnects all Bluetooth devices and deactivates all Bluetooth features. )</p>
Delete Device	<p>Delete a paired phone. Press OK and scroll to select the device. Press OK to confirm.</p>
Delete All Devices	<p>Delete all previously paired phones (and all information originally saved with those phones). Press OK to select.</p>
Return	Exit the current menu.

\* This is a speed-dependent feature.

## Advanced Menu Options

1. Press the phone button to enter the Phone menu
2. Scroll until **System Settings** appears, then press OK.
3. Scroll until **Advanced** appears, then select OK.
4. Scroll to select from the following options:

If You Select	You Can
Prompts	Get help from SYNC by using questions, helpful hints or asking you for a specific action. To turn these prompts on or off: 1. Press OK to select and scroll to select between on or off. 2. Press OK when the desired selection appears in the display. SYNC takes you back to the <b>Advanced</b> menu.
Languages	Choose between <b>English</b> , <b>Français</b> and <b>Español</b> . Once selected, all of the radio displays and prompts are in the selected language. 1. Press OK to select and then scroll through the languages. 2. Press OK when the desired selection appears in the display. If you change the language setting, the display indicates that the system is updating. When complete, SYNC takes you back to the <b>Advanced</b> menu.
Factory Defaults	Return to the factory default settings. This selection does not erase your indexed information (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices). 1. Press OK to select and then press OK again when <b>Restore Defaults?</b> appears in the display. 2. Press OK to confirm.
Master Reset	Completely erase all information stored on SYNC (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices) and return to the factory default settings. Press OK to select. The display indicates when complete and SYNC takes you back to the <b>Advanced</b> menu.
Install Application?	Install applications you have downloaded. Press OK and scroll to select. Press OK to confirm.
Delete All Devices	Delete all previously paired phones (and all information originally saved with those phones). Press OK to select.
System Info	Access the Auto Version number as well as the FDN number.

If You Select	You Can
	Press OK to select.
MAP Profile	This is a Bluetooth component which can further help your phone with the exchange of text messages.
Return	Exit the current menu.

## SYNC® APPLICATIONS AND SERVICES

In order for the following features to work, your mobile phone must be compatible with SYNC. To check your phone's compatibility, visit [www.SYNCMYride.com](http://www.SYNCMYride.com) or [www.syncmaroute.ca](http://www.syncmaroute.ca).

- SYNC Services (if equipped, U.S. only): Provides access to traffic, directions and information such as travel, horoscopes, stock prices and more.
- 911 Assist™: Can alert 911 in the event of an emergency.
- Vehicle Health Report (if equipped, U.S. only): Provides a diagnostic and maintenance report card of your vehicle.

### 911 Assist

#### WARNINGS



Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on prior to a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.



Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.

#### WARNINGS



Always place your phone in a secure location in the vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a collision. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

**Note:** The SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on prior to the incident.

**Note:** Before setting this feature on, ensure that you read the 911 Assist privacy notice later in this section for important information.

**Note:** If 911 Assist is turned on or off by any user, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is turned off, either a voice message plays or a display message/icon comes on (or both) when the vehicle is started after a previously paired phone connects.

**Note:** Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most mobile phones, some may have trouble using this feature.

If a crash deploys an airbag or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. For more information about 911 Assist visit [www.SYNCMYride.com](http://www.SYNCMYride.com) or [www.syncmaroute.ca](http://www.syncmaroute.ca).

See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 35). Important information regarding airbag deployment is in this chapter.

See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 197). Important information regarding the fuel pump shut-off is in this chapter.

## Setting 911 Assist On

1. Press the phone button to enter the Phone menu.
2. Scroll until **911 Assist** is selected.
3. Press OK to confirm and enter the 911 Assist menu.
4. Scroll to choose between the **On** and **Off** selections.
5. Press OK when the desired option appears in the radio display. **Set On** or **Set Off** appears in the display as confirmation.

Off selections include: Off with reminder and Off without reminder. Off with reminder provides a display and voice reminder at phone connection at vehicle start. Off without reminder provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder at phone connection.

To make sure that 911 Assist works properly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on prior to the incident.
- A Bluetooth-enabled and compatible phone has to be paired and connected to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.

- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

## In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (which would activate 911 Assist); however, if 911 Assist is triggered, SYNC tries to contact emergency services. If a connected phone is damaged or loses connection to SYNC, SYNC searches for, and tries to connect to, any available previously paired phone and tries to make the call to 911.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. Failure to cancel the call results in SYNC attempting to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If the call is not cancelled and a successful call is made, a pre-recorded message is played for the 911 operator, then the occupant(s) in the vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

## 911 Assist May Not Work If

- Your mobile phone or 911 Assist hardware was damaged in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) paired and connected to the system was thrown from the vehicle.

## 911 Assist Privacy Notice

Once 911 Assist is set on, it may disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators the vehicle location or other details about the vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not turn the feature on.

## Vehicle Health Report

### WARNING



Always follow scheduled maintenance instructions, regularly inspect your vehicle, and seek repair for any damage or problem you suspect. Vehicle Health Report supplements, but cannot replace normal maintenance and vehicle inspection. Vehicle Health Report only monitors certain systems that are electronically monitored by the vehicle and will not monitor or report the status of any other system, (i.e., brake lining wear). Failure to perform scheduled maintenance and regularly inspect your vehicle may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.

**Note:** Your Vehicle Health Report feature requires activation prior to use. Visit [www.SYNCMYride.com](http://www.SYNCMYride.com) to register. There is no fee or subscription associated with Vehicle Health Report, but you must register to use this feature.

**Note:** This feature may not function properly if you have enabled caller ID blocking on your mobile phone. Before running a report, review Vehicle Health Report privacy notice.

**Note:** In order to allow a break-in period for your vehicle, you may not be able to create a Vehicle Health Report until your vehicle odometer has reached 200 miles.

Register for Vehicle Health Report and set your report preferences at [www.SYNCMYride.com](http://www.SYNCMYride.com). After registering you can request a Vehicle Health Report (inside your vehicle). Return to your account at [www.SYNCMYride.com](http://www.SYNCMYride.com) to view your report. You can also choose for SYNC to automatically remind you to run reports at specific mileage intervals. Mobile phone airtime usage may apply when reporting.

The system allows you to check your vehicle's overall health in the form of diagnostic report card. The vehicle health report contains valuable information such as:

- Vehicle diagnostic information
- Scheduled maintenance
- Open Recalls and Field Service Actions
- Unserved items from vehicle inspections by your authorized dealer

To run a report (after the vehicle has been running a minimum of 60 seconds):

1. Press the phone button to enter the **Phone** menu.
2. Scroll until **Vehicle Health** is selected and press OK.
3. Scroll to select from **User Preferences** or **Run Report**.

<b>Vehicle Health Report Options</b>	
<b>User Preferences:</b> Press OK to select and enter the menu. Scroll to select from:	<b>Automatic Reports:</b> Press OK and select on or off. Select "On" to have SYNC automatically prompt you to run a health report at certain mileage intervals. You must first turn this feature on before you can select the mileage intervals at which you would like to be prompted.
	<b>Mileage Intervals:</b> Press OK. Scroll to select between 5000, 7500 or 10000 mile intervals and press OK to make your selection.
	<b>Return:</b> Press OK to exit the menu.
<b>Run Report</b>	Press OK for SYNC to run a health report of your vehicle's diagnostic systems and send the results to Ford where it is combined with scheduled maintenance information, open recalls and other field service actions and un-serviced vehicle inspection items from your authorized dealer.

### **Vehicle Health Report Privacy Notice**

When you run a Vehicle Health Report, Ford Motor Company may collect your mobile phone number (to process your report request) and diagnostic information about your vehicle. Certain versions or updates to Vehicle Health Report may also collect additional vehicle information. Ford may use the vehicle information it collects for any purpose. If you do not want to disclose your mobile phone number or vehicle information, do not run the feature or set up your Vehicle Health Report profile at [www.SYNCMyRide.com](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com). Refer to Vehicle Health Report Terms and Conditions, and Privacy Statement at [www.SYNCMyRide.com](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com) for more information.

### **SYNC Services: Traffic, Directions & Information (TDI)**

**Note:** SYNC Services requires activation prior to use. Visit [www.SYNCMyRide.com](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com) to register and check your eligibility for complimentary services. Standard phone and message rates may apply. Subscription may be required. You must also have the active SYNC Services Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone paired and connected to the system in order to connect to, and use, SYNC Services. See **Using SYNC® With Your Phone** (page 283).

**Note:** This feature does not function properly if you have enabled caller ID blocking on your mobile phone. Make sure your mobile phone is not blocking caller ID before using SYNC Services.

**Note:** *The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle, and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions. Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of errors, changes in roads, traffic conditions or driving conditions.*

**Note:** *When you connect, the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction and speed to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches you request. Further, to provide the services you request and for continuous improvement, the service may collect and record call details and voice communications. For more information, see SYNC Services Terms and Conditions at [www.SYNCMyRide.com](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com). If you do not want Ford or its service providers to collect the vehicle travel information or other information identified in the Terms and Conditions, do not activate or use the service.*

SYNC Services uses advanced vehicle sensors, integrated GPS technology and comprehensive map and traffic data, to give you personalized traffic reports, precise turn-by-turn directions, business search, news, sports, weather and more. For a complete list of services, or to learn more, please visit [www.SYNCMyRide.com](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com).

## Connecting to SYNC Services Using Voice Commands

1. Press the voice button.

2. When prompted, say "Services". This initiates an outgoing call to SYNC Services using your paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone.
3. Once you're connected to the service, follow the voice prompts to request the desired service such as traffic or directions. You can also say "What are my choices?" to receive a complete list of available services from which to choose.
4. Say "Services" to return to the services main menu or for help, say "Help".

## Connecting to SYNC Services Using the Phone Menu

1. Press the phone button to enter the **Phone** menu.
2. Scroll until **Services** appears in the display.
3. Press OK to confirm and enter the **Services** menu. The display indicates the system is connecting.
4. Press OK. SYNC initiates the call to the services portal.
5. Once you're connected to the service, follow the voice prompts to request the desired service such as traffic or directions. You can also say "What are my choices?" to receive a complete list of available services from which to choose.
6. Say "Services" to return to the services main menu or for help, say "Help".

## Receiving Turn-by-Turn Directions

1. When connected to SYNC Services, say "Directions" or "Business search". To find the closest business or type of business to your current location just say "Business search" and then "Search near me". If you need further assistance in finding a location you can

say "Operator" at any time within a directions or business search to speak with a live operator. You may also be prompted to speak with an operator. The live operator can assist you by searching for businesses by name or by category, residential addresses by street address or by name or specific street intersections. Operator Assist is a feature of your SYNC Services subscription. For more information on Operator Assist visit [www.SYNCMyRide.com/support](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com/support).

2. Follow the voice prompts to select your destination. Once your destination is selected, your current vehicle location is uploaded and a route based on current traffic conditions is calculated and sent back to your vehicle. After the route download is complete, the phone call is automatically ended. You then receive audible and visual driving instructions as you travel towards your destination.

3. While on an active route, you can select or say "Route summary" or "Route status" to view the Route Summary turn list or the Route Status ETA. You can also turn voice guidance on or off, cancel the route or update the route.

If you miss a turn, SYNC automatically asks if you want the route updated. Just say "Yes" when prompted and a new route is delivered to your vehicle.

## Disconnecting from SYNC Services

1. Press and hold the phone button on the steering wheel.
2. Say "Goodbye" from the SYNC Services main menu.

SYNC Services Quick Tips	
<b>Personalizing</b>	You can personalize your services feature to provide quicker access to your most used or favorite information. You can save address points such as work or home. You can also save favorite information like sports teams or a news category. To learn more, log onto <a href="http://www.SYNCMyRide.com">www.SYNCMyRide.com</a> .
<b>Push to interrupt</b>	Press the voice button at any time (while you are connected to SYNC TDI Services) to interrupt a voice prompt or an audio clip (such as a sports report), wait for the listening tone, then say your voice command.
<b>Portable</b>	Your subscription is associated with your Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone number, not your VIN (Vehicle Identification Number). You can pair and connect your phone to any vehicle equipped with Traffic, Directions and Information and continue enjoying your personalized services.



## SYNC Services Quick Tips

You can even access your account outside the vehicle. Just use the number on your phone's call history. Traffic and Directions features do not function properly but information services and the 411 connect and text message features are available.

## USING SYNC® WITH YOUR MEDIA PLAYER

You can access and play music from your digital music player over the vehicle's speaker system using the system's media menu or voice commands. You can also sort and play your music by specific categories such as artists, albums, etc.

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player including: iPod®, Zune™, "Plays from device" players, and most USB drives. SYNC also supports audio formats such as MP3, WMA, WAV and ACC.

### Connecting Your Digital Media Player to the USB Port

**Note:** If your digital media player has a power switch, ensure that the device is turned on.

#### To Connect Using Voice Commands

1. Plug the device into the vehicle's USB port.
2. Press the voice icon and when prompted, say "USB".
3. You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands. Refer to the media voice commands.

#### To Connect Using the System Menu

1. Plug the device into the vehicle's USB port.

2. Press **AUX** and then **MENU** to enter the **Media** menu.
3. Scroll until **Select Source** appears, then press OK.
4. Scroll to select **USB** and press OK.
5. Depending on how many digital media files are on your connected device, **Indexing** may appear in the radio display. When indexing is complete, the screen returns to the **Play** menu.

Press OK and scroll through selections of:

- **Play All**
- **Albums**
- **Genres**
- **Playlists**
- **Tracks**
- **Explore USB**
- **Similar Music**
- **Return**

### What's Playing?

At any time when a track is playing, you can press the voice icon and ask the system "What's playing?". The system reads the metadata tags (if populated) of the playing track to you.

### Media Voice Commands



Press the voice icon and, when prompted, say "USB", then any of the following:

"USB"	
"Autoplay off"	"Refine album <name>" <sup>1,2</sup>
"Autoplay on"	"Refine artist <name>" <sup>1,2</sup>
"Connections"	"Refine song <name>" <sup>1</sup>
"Pause"	"Refine track <name>" <sup>1,2</sup>
"Play"	"Repeat off"
"Play album <name>" <sup>1,2</sup>	"Repeat on"
"Play all"	"Search album <name>" <sup>1,2</sup>
"Play artist <name>" <sup>1,2</sup>	"Search artist <name>" <sup>1,2</sup>
"Play genre <name>" <sup>1,2</sup>	"Search genre <name>" <sup>1</sup>
"Play next folder" <sup>3</sup>	"Search song <name>" <sup>1</sup>
"Play next track"	"Search track <name>" <sup>1,2</sup>
"Play playlist <name>" <sup>1,2</sup>	"Shuffle off"
"Play previous folder" <sup>3</sup>	"Shuffle on"
"Play previous track"	"Similar music"
"Play song <name>" <sup>1</sup>	"What's playing?"
"Play track <name>" <sup>1,2</sup>	

<sup>1</sup> <name> is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of any desired group, artist, song, etc.

<sup>2</sup> Voice commands which are not available until indexing is complete.

<sup>3</sup> Voice commands which are only available in folder mode.

Voice Command Guide	
"Autoplay"	· Turn on to listen to music which has already been randomly indexed during the indexing process.

Voice Command Guide	
	· Turn off and the system does not begin to play any of your music until all media has all been indexed. Indexing times can vary from device to device and also with regard to the number of songs being indexed.
"Search genre" or "Play genre"	The system searches all the data from your indexed music and, if available, begins to play the chosen type of music. You can only play genres of music which are present in the GENRE metadata tags that you have on your digital media player.
"Similar music"	The system compiles a playlist and then plays similar music to what is currently playing from the USB port using indexed metadata information.
"Search", "Play", "Artist", "Track", "Album"	The system searches for a specific artist, track or album from the music indexed through the USB port.
"Refine"	This allows you to make your previous command more specific. For example, if you asked to search and play all music by a certain artist, you could then say "Refine album" and choose a specific album from the list to view. If you then select <b>Play</b> , the system only plays music from that specific album.

Press the voice icon and when prompted say "Bluetooth audio", then any of the following:

"BLUETOOTH AUDIO"
"Connections"
"Pause"
"Play"
"Play next track"
"Play previous track"

## Media Menu Features

The media menu allows you to select your media source, how to play your music (by artist, genre, shuffle, repeat, etc.), and also to add, connect or delete devices.

1. Press **AUX** and then **MENU** to enter the **Media** menu.
2. Scroll to cycle through:

When You Select	You Can
Play Menu	Play your music by artist, album, genre, playlists, tracks, similar music or to simply, play all. You can also choose to <b>Explore USB</b> to view the supported digital music files on your playing device.
Select Source	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Select and play music from your USB port, auxiliary input jack (line in) or stream music from your Bluetooth-enabled phone.</li> <li>· Press OK to select, then scroll to choose from <b>USB</b>, <b>Bluetooth Audio</b>, and <b>Line In</b>.</li> <li>· When you select <b>USB</b>, and <b>Autoplay</b> is on, you can access media files randomly as they are indexed. If turned off, indexed media is not available until the indexing process is complete. SYNC is capable of indexing thousands of average size media and notifies you if the maximum indexing file size is reached.</li> <li>· Users who have Bluetooth phones that are capable of streaming audio can press <b>SEEK</b> to play the previous or next track.</li> <li>· When you have already connected a device to the USB port, you cannot access the line in feature. Some digital media players require both USB and line in ports to stream data and music separately.</li> </ul>
Media Settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Choose to shuffle or repeat your music and select your Autoplay settings. Once these selections are turned on, they remain on until turned off.</li> <li>· Some digital media players require both USB and line in ports to stream data and music separately. Press OK to select and then scroll to choose from <b>Shuffle</b>, <b>Repeat</b> or <b>Autoplay</b>.</li> </ul>
Mobile Apps	Interact with SYNC-capable mobile applications on your smartphone.
System Settings	Access <b>Bluetooth Device</b> menu listings (add, connect, set as primary, on/off, delete) as well as <b>Advanced</b> menu listings (prompts, languages, defaults, master reset, install application and system information).
Exit Media Menu	Press OK to exit the media menu.

## Accessing Your Play Menu

This menu allows you to select and play your media by artist, album, genre, playlist, track, similar music or even to explore what is on your USB device.

1. Make sure that your device is plugged into the USB port and is turned on.

2. Press **AUX** and then **MENU** to enter the **Media** menu.
3. Scroll to select the **Play** menu, then press OK.

If there are no media files to access, the display indicates there is no media. If there are media files, you have the following options to scroll through and select from:

When You Select	You Can
Play All	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Play all indexed media (tracks) from your playing device in flat file mode, one at a time in numerical order.</li> <li>· Press OK to select. The first track title appears in the display.</li> </ul>
Artists	<p>Sort all indexed media by artist. Once selected, the system lists and then play all artists and tracks alphabetically. If there are fewer than 255 indexed artist, they are listed alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more, they are categorized in alphabetical categories.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press OK to select. You can select to play <b>All Artists</b> or any indexed artist.</li> <li>2. Scroll until the desired artist is chosen and press OK.</li> </ol>
Albums	<p>Sort all indexed media by albums. If there are fewer than 255 indexed albums, they are listed alphabetically in flat-file mode. If there are more, they are organized into alphabetical categories.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press OK to enter the album menu and select from playing all albums or from any individual indexed album.</li> <li>2. Scroll until the desired album is chosen, then press OK.</li> </ol>
Genres	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Sort indexed music by genre (category) type. SYNC lists the genres alphabetically in flat-file mode. If there are more than 255, SYNC automatically organizes them into alphabetical categories.</li> <li>· Press OK to select. Scroll to select the desired genre, then press OK.</li> </ul>
Playlists	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Access your playlists (from formats such as .ASX, .M3U, .WPL or .MTP). The system lists your playlists alphabetically in flat-file mode. If there are more than 255, they are organized into alphabetical categories.</li> <li>· Press OK to select. Scroll to select the desired playlist, then press OK.</li> </ul>

When You Select	You Can
Tracks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Search for and play a specific track which has been indexed. SYNC lists your tracks alphabetically in flat-file mode. If there are more than 255, SYNC automatically organizes them into alphabetical categories.</li> <li>· Press OK to select. Scroll to select the desired track, then press OK.</li> </ul>
Explore USB	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Explore all supported digital media on your media device connected to the USB port. You can only view media content which is compatible with SYNC; other files saved are not visible.</li> <li>· Press OK to select. Scroll to explore indexed media on your flash drive.</li> </ul>
Similar Music	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Play music similar to what is currently playing from the USB port. The system uses the metadata information of each song to compile a playlist for you.</li> <li>· Press OK to select. The system creates a new list of similar songs and begin playing. The metadata tags must be populated for this feature to include each track.</li> <li>· With certain playing devices, if your metadata tags are not populated, the tracks won't be available in voice recognition, play menu or similar music. However, if you place these tracks onto your playing device in <b>Mass Storage Device Mode</b> they are available in voice recognition, <b>Play</b> menu browsing and <b>Similar Music</b>. Unknowns are placed into any unpopulated metadata tag.</li> </ul>
Return	Exit the current menu.

## System Settings

System settings provide access to your **Bluetooth Devices** and **Advanced** menu features.

The **Bluetooth Devices** menu allows you to add, connect and delete a device as turn the Bluetooth feature on and off.

The **Advanced** menu allows you to access and set prompts, languages, defaults and perform a master reset.

## Bluetooth Devices Menu Options

1. Press **AUX** and then **MENU** to enter the **Media** menu.
2. Scroll until **System Settings** appears and select OK, then press OK.
3. Scroll until **Bluetooth Devices** appears.
4. Press OK and then scroll to select from:

When You Select	You Can
Add Bluetooth Device*	Allows you to pair additional devices to the system. 1. Press OK to select and press OK again when <b>Find SYNC</b> appears in the display. 2. Follow the directions in your phone's user guide to put your phone into discovery mode. A six-digit PIN appears in the display. 3. When prompted on your phone's six-digit display, enter the PIN.
Connect Bluetooth Device	Connect a previously paired Bluetooth-enabled phone. 1. Press OK to select and view a list of devices. 2. Scroll until the desired device is chosen and press OK to connect the device.
Set Bluetooth On/Off	· Turn the Bluetooth feature on and off. · Press OK and scroll to toggle between <b>On</b> and <b>Off</b> . When the desired selection is chosen, press OK. Turning Bluetooth off disconnects all Bluetooth devices and deactivates Bluetooth features.
Delete Device	· Delete a paired media device. · Press OK and scroll to select the device. Press OK to confirm.
Delete All Devices	· Delete all previously paired devices. · Press OK to select.
Return	Exit the current menu.

\*This is a speed-dependent feature.

## Advanced Menu Options

1. Press **AUX** and then **MENU** to enter the **Media** menu.

2. Scroll until **System Settings** appears and select OK, then press OK.
3. Scroll until **Advanced** appears.
4. Press OK and then scroll to select from:

When You Select	You Can
Prompts	Have SYNC guide you by asking questions, helpful hints or ask you for a specific action. 1. Press OK to select and scroll to select between on or off.

When You Select	You Can
	2. Press OK when the desired selection appears in the display. SYNC takes you back to the <b>Advanced</b> menu.
Languages	Choose from <b>English, Français or Español</b> . The displays and prompts are in the selected language. 1. Press OK to select and then scroll through the languages. 2. Press OK when the desired selection appears in the display. 3. If you change the language setting, the display indicates that the system is updating. When complete, SYNC takes you back to the <b>Advanced</b> menu.
Factory Defaults	Return to the factory default settings. This selection does not erase your indexed information (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices). 1. Press OK to select and then press OK again when <b>Restore Defaults?</b> appears in the display. 2. Press OK to confirm.
Master Reset	Completely erase all information stored on SYNC (all phonebook, call history, text messages and all paired devices) and return to the factory default settings.
Application	Download new software applications (if available) and then load the desired applications through your USB port. Refer to the web site for more information.
Return	Exit the current menu.

## SYNC® TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

Use the website at any time to check your phone's compatibility, register your account and set preferences as well as access a customer representative via an on-line chat (during certain hours). Visit [www.SYNCMYride.com](http://www.SYNCMYride.com) or [www.syncmaroute.ca](http://www.syncmaroute.ca) for more information.



Phone Issues		
Issue	Possible Cause(s)	Possible Solution(s)
A lot of background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Review your phone's user guide regarding audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible phone malfunction.	Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device's battery, then trying again.
SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· This is a phone-dependent feature.</li> <li>· Possible phone malfunction.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility.</li> <li>· Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's, then trying again.</li> <li>· Try "pushing" your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the <b>Add Contacts</b> feature.</li> <li>· Use the "SYNCmyphone" feature available on the website.</li> </ul>
The system says "Phonebook downloaded" but my phonebook in SYNC is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your phone's capability.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Try "pushing" your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the <b>Add Contacts</b> feature.</li> <li>· If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to the device memory.</li> <li>· Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact.</li> </ul>
I'm having trouble connecting my phone to SYNC.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· This is a phone-dependent feature.</li> <li>· Possible phone malfunction.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility.</li> <li>· Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's, then trying again.</li> </ul>

Phone Issues		
Issue	Possible Cause(s)	Possible Solution(s)
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Try deleting your device from SYNC, deleting SYNC from your device and trying again.</li> <li>· Check the security and "auto accept/prompt always" settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your phone.</li> <li>· Update your device's firm-ware.</li> <li>· Turn off the Auto phone-book download setting.</li> </ul>
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· This is a phone-dependent feature.</li> <li>· Possible phone malfunction.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility.</li> <li>· Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's, then trying again.</li> </ul>

USB/Media Issues		
Issue	Possible Cause(s)	Possible Solution(s)
I'm having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device's battery, then trying again.</li> <li>· Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.</li> <li>· Make sure the USB cable is properly inserted into the device and the vehicle's USB port.</li> </ul>

USB/Media Issues		
Issue	Possible Cause(s)	Possible Solution(s)
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.</li> </ul>
SYNC does not recognize my device when I turn on the car.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a phone-dependent feature. The device is not connected.	Make sure the device is connected to SYNC and that you have pressed play on your device.
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Your music files may not contain the proper artist, song title, album or genre information.</li> <li>The file may be corrupted.</li> <li>The song may have copy-right protection which does not allow it to play.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make sure that all song details are populated.</li> <li>Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to MTP class.</li> </ul>

Vehicle Health Report/Services (Traffic, Directions and Information) Issues		
Issue	Possible Cause(s)	Possible Solution(s)
I received a text that the Vehicle Health Report is not activated.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Your account may not be activated on the website.</li> <li>You may have the wrong VIN (vehicle identification number) listed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This is a free feature, but you must first register online to use it.</li> </ul>

<b>Vehicle Health Report/Services (Traffic, Directions and Information) Issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible Cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible Solution(s)</b>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Make sure that your VIN is correctly listed in your account.</li> </ul>
I'm unable to retrieve the report on the website, or I receive a system error.	The preferred dealer information did not load correctly.	When you register your account, you must list a preferred dealer. If one is already listed, try selecting another dealer and logging out. Log back in and change it back to your preferred dealer and retrieve the report.
I'm unable to submit a report.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· This could be due to your phone's compatibility.</li> <li>· Bad signal strength.</li> <li>· Your phone may not be activated on the website.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Update your mobile number in your account on the website.</li> <li>· Make sure you have full signal strength and that your Bluetooth volume level has been turned up.</li> <li>· Try deleting your phone and performing a clean pairing.</li> </ul>
I heard a commercial when I tried to use Traffic, Directions and Information.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· The phone in use is not activated.</li> <li>· Your phone has ID blocker active.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· This is a free feature, but you must first register online to use it.</li> <li>· Turn off ID blocker on your phone as the system recognizes you by your phone number.</li> <li>· Make sure the currently connected phone is the same one that is registered on your SyncMyRide account.</li> </ul>

Voice Command Issues		
Issue	Possible Cause(s)	Possible Solution(s)
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· You may be using the wrong voice commands.</li> <li>· You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Review the phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.</li> <li>· Be aware that SYNC's microphone is either in your rear view mirror or in the headliner just above the windshield.</li> </ul>
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· You may be using the wrong voice commands.</li> <li>· You may not be saying the name exactly as it is saved.</li> <li>· The system may not be "reading" the name the same way you are saying it.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.</li> <li>· Say the song or artist exactly as they are listed. If you say "Play Artist Prince" the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation.</li> <li>· Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".</li> <li>· If the songs are saved in all CAPS, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A".</li> <li>· Do not use special characters in the title as the system does not recognize them.</li> </ul>
SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· You may be using the wrong voice commands.</li> <li>· You may not be saying the name exactly as it is saved.</li> <li>· Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar, or they may contain special characters.</li> <li>· Your phonebook contacts may be saved in CAPS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Review the phone voice commands at the beginning of the phone section.</li> <li>· Make sure you are saying the contacts exactly as they are listed. For example, if a contact is saved as Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson".</li> </ul>

<b>Voice Command Issues</b>		
<b>Issue</b>	<b>Possible Cause(s)</b>	<b>Possible Solution(s)</b>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· The system works better if you list full names such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe".</li><li>· Do not use special characters such as 123 or ICE as the system does not recognize them.</li><li>· If contacts are saved in CAPS, you have to spell them. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E".</li></ul>

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** Some features are not available while the vehicle is moving.

**Note:** You can also directly access the Home screen and Information screen by pressing the Home ("house" icon) and Information ("i" icon) buttons on your steering wheel controls.

This system uses a four-corner strategy to provide quick access to vehicle features and settings. The comprehensive touchscreen provides easy interaction with your mobile phone, multimedia, climate control and navigation system. The corners display any active modes within those menus, such as your phone being connected or the climate temperature.



### MENU

Press to select any of the following:

- Clock
- Sound
- Settings
- Display

- Vehicle
- Help

### INFORMATION

Press to select any of the following:

- SYNC® Services
- Notifications
- SYNC Apps
- SIRIUS® Travel Link™
- Calendar

### PHONE

Press to select any of the following:

- Quick Dial
- Call History
- Settings
- Phonebook
- Text Messaging
- Making and Receiving Calls

### NAVIGATION

Press to select any of the following:

- My Home
- Previous Destinations
- Emergency
- Intersection
- Map
- Favorites
- Point of Interest
- Street Address
- City Center

### ENTERTAINMENT

Press to select any of the following:

- AM or FM
- CD
- BT Stereo
- SD Card
- SIRIUS

# MyFord Touch®

---

- USB
- AV In

## CLIMATE

Press to select any of the following:

- Driver Settings
- Recirculated Air
- Auto
- Dual
- Passenger Settings
- A/C
- Defrost

## Using the Touch-Sensitive Controls on Your System

Your vehicle's centerstack has touch-sensitive switches for your infotainment and climate control systems. To turn a feature on and off, just touch the graphic with your finger. To get the best performance from the touch-sensitive controls:

- Make sure your hands are clean and dry.
- Since the touchscreen operates based on the touch of a finger, you may have trouble using it if you are wearing gloves.
- Use your bare finger to touch the center of a touch-control graphic. Touching off-center of the graphic may cause a nearby control to turn on or off.
- Do not press hard on the controls. They are sensitive to light touch.
- Metal and other conductive material should be kept away from the surface of the touchscreen as this may cause electronic interference (i.e. control activation).

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you may also have these controls on your bezel:

- Power: Turn the media (or climate features) on or off.
- VOL: Increase or decrease the volume.
- Fan: Increase or decrease the fan speed.
- Seek and Tune buttons: Use as you normally would in media modes.
- Eject: Eject a CD.
- SOURCE: Touch the word repeatedly to see all available media modes. The screen does not change, but you see the media changes in the lower left status bar.
- SOUND: Touch the word to access the Sound menu where you can make adjustments to settings such as: Bass, Treble, Midrange, Balance and Fade, THX Deep Note Demo (if equipped), DSP (if equipped), Occupancy Mode (if equipped), and Speed Compensated Volume settings.
- Hazard flasher: Press the button to turn the hazard flashers on or off.

## Cleaning the Touchscreen Display

Clean the display with a clean, soft cloth such as one used for cleaning glasses. If dirt or finger prints are still visible, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth. Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the display. Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the display.

## Support

The SYNC support team is available to help you with any questions you aren't able to answer on your own.

Monday-Saturday, 8:30 am-8:00 pm.

In the United States, call: 1-888-270-1055

In Canada, call: 1-800-565-3673



# MyFord Touch®

Times are subject to change due to holidays.

## Safety Information

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC:

- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Carefully place cords and cables where they cannot be stepped on or interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in the vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. Refer to your device's user guide for further information.

- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See your authorized dealer.
- For your safety, some SYNC functions are speed-dependent and cannot be performed when the vehicle is traveling at speeds greater than 3 mph (5 km/h).

Make sure that you review your device's user guide before using it with SYNC.

## Speed-Restricted Features

Some features of this system may be too difficult to use while the vehicle is in motion so they're restricted from being modified unless the vehicle is not moving. Some examples of these are listed below:

- Screens that are too crowded with information, such as Point of Interest (POI) reviews and ratings, SIRIUS Travel Link sports scores, movie times, ski conditions, etc.
- Any action that requires using a keyboard, such as entering a navigation destination or editing information
- All lists are limited so the user can view fewer entries (e.g. phone contacts, recent phone call entries)

Listed below are more specific features that can only be modified while the vehicle is not moving:

Restricted Features	
Mobile Phone	Pairing a Bluetooth phone
	Adding phonebook contacts or uploading phonebook contacts (from a USB)
	Lists entries are limited for phone contacts and recent phone call entries
System Functionality	Editing the keypad code

## MyFord Touch®

Restricted Features	
	Enabling Valet Mode
	Editing settings while the rear view camera or active park assist are active
Wi-Fi or Wireless	Editing wireless settings
	Editing the list of wireless networks
Videos, photos or graphics	Playing video
	Editing the screen's wallpaper or adding new wallpaper
Text Messages	Composing text messages
	Viewing received text messages
	Editing preset text messages
Navigation	Using the keyboard to enter a destination
	Demo navigation route
	Adding or editing Address Book entries or Avoid Areas

### Privacy Information

When a mobile phone is connected to SYNC, SYNC creates a profile within your vehicle that is linked to that mobile phone. This profile is created in order to offer you more mobile features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your mobile phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your mobile phone was not connected to SYNC. In addition, if you connect a media device, SYNC creates and retains an index of media content supported by SYNC. SYNC also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent SYNC activity. The log profile and other SYNC data may be used to improve SYNC and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The mobile profile, media device index, and development log will remain in the vehicle unless you delete it and are generally accessible only in the vehicle when the mobile phone or media player is connected. If you no longer plan to use SYNC, or the vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all information stored in SYNC.

SYNC data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to the vehicle's SYNC module. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada will not access SYNC data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada. For further privacy information, see the sections on 911 Assist™ (if equipped), Vehicle Health Report (if equipped), and Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped).

### Accessing Your Home Screen



Press the house icon to access the home screen.

## Using Your Voice Recognition System

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you. The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings).

The system also asks short questions (confirmation prompts) when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request.

When using voice commands, words and icons may also appear in the lower left status bar indicating the status of the voice session (i.e., listening, success, failed, paused or try again).

## How to Use Voice Commands with Your System



Press the voice icon; after the tone, speak your command clearly.

## What Can I Say?

To access the available voice commands for the current session, do one of the following:

- During a voice session, press the lower left status bar of the screen
- Say "What can I say?" for an on-screen listing of the possible voice commands associated with your current voice session
- Press the voice icon; after the tone, say "Help" for an audible list of possible voice commands.

# MyFord Touch®

## Helpful Hints

- Make sure the interior of the vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.
- After pressing the voice icon, wait until after the tone sounds and "Listening" appears before saying a command. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.
- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- At any time you can interrupt the system while it is speaking by pressing the voice icon.

## Basic commands

Say	If You Want To
"Phone"	Make calls.
"USB"	Access the device connected to your USB port.
"Bluetooth audio"	Stream audio from your phone.
"Line in"	Access the device connected to the auxiliary input jack.
"Cancel"	Cancel the requested action.
"SYNC"	Return to the main menu.
"Voice settings"	Adjust the level of voice interaction and feedback.
"Vehicle health report"	Run a vehicle health report.*
"Services"	Access the SYNC Services portal.*
"Mobile apps"	Access mobile applications.*
"Help"	Hear a list of voice commands available in the current mode.

\* If equipped, U.S. only

These commands can be said at any time during a voice session
"Main menu"
"List of commands"
"What can I say?"
"Next page"

# MyFord Touch®

## These commands can be said at any time during a voice session

"Previous page"
"Go back"
"Cancel"
"Exit"
"Help"

### Accessing a List of Available Commands

1. Using the touchscreen, press the Menu icon, Help, then Voice Command List.
2. Using the steering wheel control, press the voice icon. After the tone, speak your command clearly.

## Available Voice Commands

"Audio list of commands"	"Radio list of commands"
"Bluetooth audio list of commands"	"SD card list of commands"
"Browse list of commands"	"Sirius satellite list of commands" *
"CD list of commands"	"Travel link list of commands" *
"Climate control list of commands"	"USB list of commands"
"List of commands"	"Voice instructions list of commands"
"Navigation list of commands" *	"Voice settings list of commands"
"Phone list of commands"	"Help"

\* If equipped

### Voice Settings

Voice settings allow you to customize the level of system interaction, help and feedback. The system defaults to standard interaction which uses candidate lists and confirmation prompts as these provide the highest level of guidance and feedback.

## MyFord Touch®

- **Interaction Mode:** Novice mode provides more detailed interaction and guidance while the advanced mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
- **Confirmation Prompts:** These are short questions the system asks when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request. If turned off, the system simply makes a best guess as to what you requested and you may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.
- **Phone and Media Candidate Lists:** These are lists of possible results from your voice commands. The system creates these lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice command.

To access these settings using the touchscreen:

1. Press the Menu icon, Settings, then Voice Control.
2. Select from the following:
  - Interaction Mode
  - Confirmation Prompts
  - Media Candidate Lists
  - Phone Candidate Lists
  - Voice Control Volume

To access these settings using voice commands:

1. Press the voice icon; after the tone sounds, the system says "Please say a command". Another tone sounds to let you know the system is listening.
2. Say any of the following commands:

Voice Settings Using Voice Commands
"Interaction mode novice"
"Interaction mode advanced"
"Confirmation prompts on"
"Confirmation prompts off"
"Phone candidate lists on"
"Phone candidate lists off"
"Media candidate lists on"
"Media candidate lists off"
"Help"

### ***Using Voice Commands with the Touchscreen Options***

Your voice system has a dual mode feature which allows you to switch between using voice commands and making on-screen selections. This is most often available when using navigation.

## MyFord Touch®

On-screen buttons are outlined in blue to indicate the selections that are part of the dual mode feature. For example, if while you are in a voice session rather than saying the command "Enter street name" to change the field, you can press **Street** and the voice session does not end. Instead, the voice system changes to the **Street** field and asks you to say the street name. The buttons not outlined in blue cannot be used as voice commands; if they are touched during a voice session, the voice session is canceled.

For example, you can choose from the following on the Navigation home screen:

- My Home
- Favorites
- Previous Destinations
- Point of Interest (POI)
- Emergency
- Street Address
- Intersection
- Cancel Route

Some of the voice commands that are available while viewing this screen are:

Destination
"Destination my home"
"Destination street address"
"Destination favorites"
"Destination previous destinations"
"Destination POI"
"Destination intersection"
"Destination emergency"

If you choose Street Address from the navigation screen, you can choose from the following:

- Number
- City

- Street Name
- State/Prov

Some of the voice commands that are available while viewing this screen are:

Street Address
"Enter house number"
"Change house number"
"Enter street name"
"Change street name"
"Enter city"



# MyFord Touch®

---

Street Address
"Change city"
"Enter state"
"Change state"

If you choose Points of Interest from the navigation screen, you can choose from the following:

- Search Area
- Search By Name
- Fuel Station

- ATM
- All Restaurants
- Accommodations
- Parking

Some of the voice commands that are available while viewing this screen are:

Points of Interest or POI
"Destination <POI category name>"
"Search by name"
"Search by category"
"Change search area"
"Change state"

**Note:** *These are just a sample of the voice commands available within the Points of Interest section; the categories themselves are also technically voice commands.*

If you choose Intersection from the navigation screen, you can choose from the following:

- 1st Street
- 2nd Street

- City
- State/Prov

Some of the voice commands that are available while viewing this screen are:

Intersection
"Enter first street name"
"Change first street name"
"Enter second street name"
"Change second street name"

# MyFord Touch®

Intersection
"Enter city"
"Change city"
"Enter state"
"Change state"

The dual mode feature is also available when the voice system displays a list of items to pick from during a voice session, where you would be able to touch the line item or say "Line 2". If a command is not understood or there are multiple options, the system returns a list for you to choose from.

## MENU

Under the menu setting, you can set your clock, access and make adjustments to the display, sound and vehicle settings as well as access settings for specific modes or the help feature.

### Setting the Clock

**Note:** The date is set by your vehicle's GPS; you cannot manually set the date.

**Note:** If the battery has been disconnected, the vehicle needs to acquire a GPS signal to update the clock. Once your vehicle acquires the signal, it may take a few minutes for the update to display the correct time.

1. Press Menu, then Clock.
2. Press + and - to adjust the time.

From this screen, you can also make other adjustments such as 12-hour or 24-hour mode, activate GPS time synchronization and have the system automatically update new time zones.

Once you update any settings they are automatically saved.

## Display Settings

To access and make adjustments to the touchscreen display using the touchscreen, press Menu, then Display. Select any of the following:

- Brightness
- Auto Dim On/Off
- Mode: Auto, Day or Night
- Edit Wallpaper



To access and make adjustments to the touchscreen display using voice commands, press the voice button on your steering wheel controls and, when prompted, say "Display Settings".

### Uploading Photos for Your Home Screen Wallpaper

**Note:** You cannot load photos directly from your camera. You must access the photos from either your USB mass storage device or from an SD card.

Your system allows you to upload and view up to 32 photos. To upload photos, press Menu, Display, then Edit Wallpaper. Follow the system prompts to upload your photographs.

### Photo Display Limitations

**Note:** Photographs with extremely large dimensions (i.e. 2048 x 1536) may not be compatible and appear as a blank (black) image on the display.

# MyFord Touch®

Only the photograph(s) which meet the following conditions are displayed:

- Compatible file formats are as follows: .jpg, .gif, .png, .bmp
- Each file must be 1.5 MB or less.

- Recommended dimensions: 800 x 384

## Sound

Press Menu, then Sound to access settings for:

Sound Settings	
Bass	THX Deep Note Demo*
Treble	DSP*
Midrange	Occupancy Mode*
Balance and fade	Speed Compensated Volume

\* If equipped.

## Rear View Camera (If Equipped)

This menu allows you to access settings for your rear view camera.

Press Menu, Vehicle, then Reverse Camera. Select from the following settings:

- Rear Camera Delay
- Guideline
- Visual Park Aid Alert

## Valet Mode

**Note:** *If you are locked out and need to reset the PIN, you can enter 3681 and the system unlocks.*

Valet mode allows you to lock the system so that none of your information on the system can be accessed until it is unlocked with the correct PIN.

1. Press Menu, Vehicle, then Valet Mode.
2. Select Enable Valet Mode.
3. When prompted, enter a four-digit PIN.

After you press Continue the system is locked until the correct PIN is entered again.

## Changing Your Door Keypad Code (If Equipped)

To change the keypad code for your keyless entry keypad system:

1. Press Menu, Vehicle, then Edit Door Keypad Code.
2. Enter your current factory code, then, when prompted, enter your new code.

## Active Park Assist (If Equipped)

When activated, your system displays directions for you regarding the active park assist process. See **Active Park Assist** (page 163).

## Settings

Access and adjust system settings, voice features, as well as phone, navigation and wireless settings. Some of these settings can also be accessed with regard to their specific modes (i.e., phone and media).

## System Settings

Press Menu, Settings, System. Select from the following:

# MyFord Touch®

System Settings	
Language	Distance Units
Temperature Units	System Prompt Volume
Touchscreen Beeps	Keyboard Layout
Install Applications	Master Reset

## Voice Settings

Press Menu, Settings, then Voice.

Customize the level of system interaction, help and feedback.

Voice Settings	
Interaction Mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· Standard interaction mode provides more detailed interaction and guidance.</li><li>· Advanced mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts.</li></ul>
Confirmation Prompts	Short questions asked by the system when the system has not clearly heard or understood your request. (Even with confirmation prompts turned off, you may be asked to confirm settings occasionally.)
Media Candidate Lists	Candidate lists are possible results from your voice commands. If these are turned off, the system simply makes a best guess at your request.
Phone Candidate Lists	
Voice Control Volume	Allows you to adjust the voice volume level.

## Media Player Settings

To access settings for your media player, press Menu, Settings, then Media Player.

Select from the following:

- Autoplay On/Off
- Bluetooth Devices
- Index Bluetooth On/Off
- Database Info
- Media Management On/Off

**Note:** With Autoplay and Index Bluetooth turned on, you can listen to music which has already been indexed. With these features turned off, SYNC does not play any of your music until all the media (on your USB thumb drive, flash drive, portable music player, etc.) has been indexed.

## Navigation Settings

To access settings for your media player, press Menu, Settings, then Navigation.

# MyFord Touch®

Select from the following:

- Map Preferences
- Route Preferences
- Navigation Preferences
- Traffic Preferences
- Avoid Areas

## Phone Settings

To access settings for your media player, press Menu, Settings, then Phone (or Phone, then Settings).

Phone Settings	
Bluetooth Devices	Connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite.
Bluetooth On/Off	Turn Bluetooth on or off.
Do Not Disturb	Have all calls go directly to your voice mail and not ring in the vehicle cabin. With this feature turned on, text message notifications are also suppressed and do not ring inside the cabin.
911 Assist	Turn 911 Assist™ on or off. See <b>Information</b> (page 358).
Text Message Notification	Select how you would like to be notified when you receive a text message, if supported by your phone. Choose from possible system alert tones, text-to-speech or silent.
Internet Data Connection*	Use this screen to make adjustments to your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the PAN (personal area network) or to turn off your connection. You can also choose to make adjustments to your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming or query on connect. Press <b>?</b> for additional information.
Manage Phonebook	Access features such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook.
Display Call History	Display call history.

\* If compatible.

## Wireless and Internet

To access, press Menu, Settings, then Wireless and Internet.

Select from the following:

- Wi-Fi settings
- Bluetooth settings
- USB mobile broadband
- Prioritize connection methods

# MyFord Touch®

## Wi-Fi

Your system has a Wi-Fi feature which creates a wireless network within your vehicle, thereby allowing other devices (i.e. personal computers or phones) in your vehicle to speak to each other, share files, play games, etc.

Using this feature, everyone in your vehicle can also gain access the internet if:

- You have a USB mobile broadband connection inside the vehicle
- Your phone supports PAN (personal area networking)
- You are parked outside of a wireless hotspot

To access, press Menu, Settings, Wireless and Internet, then Wi-Fi settings. Select from the following options:

If You Select	You Can
Wi-Fi Network (Client) Mode On/Off	Turn the Wi-Fi feature on or off in your vehicle. Make sure that On is selected for connectivity purposes.
Choose a Wireless Network	Use a previously stored wireless network. You can categorize by alphabetical listing, Priority and Signal Strength. You can also choose to search for a network, connect to a network, disconnect from a network, receive more information, prioritize a network or delete a network.
Search for Wireless Networks	View a list of wireless networks.
Gateway Access Point Mode (On/Off)	Make SYNC an access point for a phone or a computer by turning this feature on. This forms the local area network within the vehicle for things such as game playing, file transfer, internet browsing, etc.
Gateway Access Point Device List	View who has connected to your Wi-Fi connection recently.

Press the **?** button (if available) for additional information.



The  
Wi-Fi

## USB Mobile Broadband

**Note:** You must activate your mobile broadband device on your PC prior to connecting it to the system.

**Note:** USB mobile broadband settings may not be displayed if the device is already activated.

E142626

CERTIFIED Logo is a certification mark of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

# MyFord Touch®

Instead of using Wi-Fi, your system can also use a USB mobile broadband connection to access the internet. This screen allows you to set up what is your typical area for your USB mobile broadband connection.

You can select the following:

- Country
- Carrier
- Phone Number
- User Name
- Password

## Prioritize Connection Methods

This screen allows you to choose your connection methods and change them as needed. You can select to Change Order and have the system either always attempt to connecting using a USB mobile broadband or using Wi-Fi.

## Bluetooth Settings

This screen shows you what device is currently paired with the system as well as giving you your typical Bluetooth options to connect, disconnect, set as favorite, delete and add device.

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG.

## Help

Your touchscreen system has a help feature which you can access at any time.

To access, press Menu, then Help. Select from the following options:

If You Select	You Can
Where Am I?	View the vehicle's current location, if your vehicle is equipped with navigation. If your vehicle is not equipped with navigation, nothing is displayed.
911 Assist	Access the 911 Assist settings, vehicle restart instructions and emergency quick dial contacts. <b>In Case of Emergency (ICE) Quick Dial:</b> This feature allows you to save up to two numbers as ICE contacts for quick access in the event of an emergency. Select <b>Edit</b> to access your phonebook and then select the desired contacts. The numbers then appear as options on this screen for the ICE 1 and ICE 2 buttons. The ICE contacts you select are presented to you at the completion of the 911 Assist call process for quick access.
Voice Command List	View possible voice commands.

From this screen, you can also access System information, Software Licenses and Driving Restrictions.

To access Help using the voice commands, press the voice button, then, after the tone, say "Help". The system provides voice commands that can be used in the current mode.

ENTERTAINMENT

Your system offers many media options. You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

Browsing Device Content

When listening to any type of audio, you can browse through other devices without having to change sources. For example, if you are currently listening to the radio, you can browse all the artists that are stored on your USB device.



Press the voice icon on the steering wheel. When prompted, you can say:

"BROWSE" within Devices
"Browse" <sup>1</sup>
"Browse <league> games" <sup>2</sup>
"Browse <Sirius category> channels" <sup>2</sup>
"Browse CD track list"
"Browse SD card"
"Browse SIRIUS channel guide" <sup>2</sup>
"Browse USB"
"Help"
<sup>1</sup> If you only say "Browse", you can then say any commands in the following chart.
<sup>2</sup> If equipped with SIRIUS® satellite radio.

"BROWSE"
"<League> Games" <sup>1</sup>
"<Sirius category> channels" <sup>1</sup>
"CD Track List"
"SD card" <sup>2</sup>
"SIRIUS Channel Guide" <sup>1</sup>



# MyFord Touch®

<b>"BROWSE"</b>
"USB" <sup>2</sup>
"Help"
<sup>1</sup> If equipped with SIRIUS® satellite radio.
<sup>2</sup> For more commands in SD card or USB mode, see the "SD Card and USB Port" section of this chapter.

## AM/FM Radio

To change between AM and FM presets, just touch the AM or FM tab.



Press the lower left corner of the touchscreen and then select the AM or FM tab.

When You Select	You Can
Preset	Save a station by pressing and holding one of the memory preset areas. There is a brief mute while the station is being saved, then sound returns when it's done.
Direct Tune	Enter the desired station number when prompted. Press Enter.
HD Radio	Allows you to receive radio broadcasts digitally (where available), providing free, crystal clear sound.
Scan	Go to the next strong AM or FM radio station.
Options	Adjust more audio system settings: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· <b>Sound Settings</b> adjusts Bass, Treble, Midrange, Balance and Fade, THX Deep Note Demo (if equipped), DSP (if equipped), Occupancy Mode (if equipped), and Speed Compensated Volume settings.</li> <li>· <b>Set PTY for Seek/Scan</b> allows you to select a category of music you would like to search for and then choose to either seek or scan for the stations.</li> <li>· <b>RDS Text Display</b> allows you to always view the information broadcast by FM stations by selecting On.</li> <li>· <b>Auto Presets (AST)</b> allows you to have the system automatically store the six strongest stations in your current location.</li> </ul>

## MyFord Touch®

When You Select	You Can
	· <b>TAG (if available)</b> allows you to tag a song to download later. When you select On, TAG appears on-screen when HD radio is active. You can press TAG to save the information of the song that is playing. When you plug in your portable music player, the information is transferred (if supported by your device). When you are connected to iTunes®, the tags appear to remind you of the songs you'd like to download.

### HD Radio™ Information (If Available)

**Note:** *HD Radio broadcasts are not available in all markets.*

HD Radio technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio. Your system has a special receiver which allows it to receive digital broadcasts (where available) in addition to the analog broadcasts it already receives. Digital broadcasts provide a better sound quality than analog broadcasts with free, crystal clear audio and no static or distortion. For more information, and a guide to available stations and programming, please visit [www.hdradio.com](http://www.hdradio.com).

When this feature is enabled and you are tuned to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology, you may notice the following indicators on your screen:



E142616

The HD Radio logo blinks when a digital station is being acquired and is solid when digital audio is playing. When this logo is available, you may also see Title and Artist fields on-screen.

The multicast indicator appears in FM mode (only) if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The numbers that are highlighted signify available digital channels where new or different content is available. HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in analog and digital broadcasts. Any additional multicast stations (HD2 through HD7) are only broadcast digitally.

**TAG** allows you to save a song to download later. When you are on an acquired HD Radio station, the TAG button is available (provided the feature has been turned on). To use the tag feature:

1. Press AM or FM, Options, then TAG On
2. When you hear a song you like, touch TAG.
3. The system automatically saves the song's information and transfers it to your portable music player (if supported) when it is connected to the system. If your music player is connected at the time, the system automatically transfers the tag to your player and a pop-up confirms the transfer.

## MyFord Touch®

---

4. When you access iTunes® with your portable music player, the tags appear to you to be reminded of the song. The system allows you to tag up to approximately 100 songs. For a list of

devices that support tagging, refer to [www.SYNCMYride.com](http://www.SYNCMYride.com) or [www.syncmaroute.ca](http://www.syncmaroute.ca).

When HD Radio broadcasts are active, you can access the following functions:

When You Select	You Can
Scan	Hear a brief sampling of all available stations. This feature still works when HD Radio reception is activated, although it does not scan for HD2-HD7 channels. You may see the HD logo appear if the station has a digital broadcast.
Seek	Hear the next strong radio station. If the current station has multiple digital broadcasts, the multicast indicator appears. Press Seek repeatedly to advance through all available broadcasts. If you are on the last multicast channel, press Seek to advance to the next strong station.
Tune	Go up and down the frequency in individual increments. If the current station has multiple digital broadcasts, the multicast indicator appears. Press Tune repeatedly to advance through all available broadcasts. If you are on the last broadcast channel, turn to advance to the next frequency on the band.
To save a multicast station as a preset	When the channel is active on-screen, press and hold a memory preset slot until the sound returns. There is a brief mute, then the sound returns signifying it was saved. When recalling a HD2 or HD3 memory preset, there is a mute before the digital audio is played as the system must once again acquire the digital signal. As with any saved radio station, you cannot access the saved station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.

# MyFord Touch®

---

## ***HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting***

<b>Potential Reception Issues</b>	
Reception area	<p>If you are listening to a multicast station and you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station may mute due to weak signal strength.</p> <p>If you are listening to HD1, the system switches back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. However, if you are listening to any of the possible HD2-HD7 multicast channels, the station mutes and stay muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.</p>
Station blending	<p>When a station is first received (aside from HD2-HD7 multicast stations), the system first plays the station in the analog version and then, if receiver verifies the station is an HD Radio station, it shifts to the digital version. Depending on the station quality, you may hear a slight sound change when the station changes from analog to digital. This shift from analog to digital sound or digital back to analog, is known as "blending".</p>

In order to provide the best possible experience, a contact form has been developed to report any station issues found while listening to a station broadcasting with HD Radio technology. Every station is independently owned and operated. These stations are responsible for ensuring all audio streams and data fields are accurate.

## MyFord Touch®

Potential Station Issues		
Issues	Cause	Action
Echo, stutter, skip or repeat in audio. Increase or decrease in audio volume.	Poor time-alignment by the radio broadcaster.	None. Broadcast issue.
Sound fading or blending in and out.	The radio is shifting between analog and digital audio.	None. Reception issue that may clear up as you continue to drive.
Audio mute delay when selecting HD2/HD3, multicast preset or <b>Direct Tune</b> .	The digital multicast is not available until the HD Radio broadcast is decoded. Once decoded, the audio is available.	None. This is normal behavior. Wait until the audio is available.
Cannot access HD2/HD3 multicast channel when recalling a preset or from a direct tune.	The previously stored multicast preset or direct tune is not available in your current reception area.	None. The station is not available in your current location.
Text information does not match currently playing audio.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.*
No text information shown for currently selected frequency.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.*
HD2-HD7 stations not found when <b>Scan</b> is pressed.	Pressing Scan disables HD2-HD7 channel search.	None. This is normal behavior.

\* [http://www.ibiquity.com/automotive/report\\_radio\\_station\\_experiences](http://www.ibiquity.com/automotive/report_radio_station_experiences)

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp. Ford Motor Company and iBiquity Digital Corp. are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

### Radio Voice Commands



If you are listening to the radio, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.

If you are not listening to the radio, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "Radio", then any of the following commands.

## MyFord Touch®

---

<b>"RADIO"</b>	
"<87.9-107.9>"	"FM autoset preset <#>"
"<87.9-107.9> HD" <sup>1</sup>	"FM preset <#>"
"<530-1710>"	"FM 1"
"AM"	"FM 1 preset <#>"
"AM <530-1710>"	"FM 2"
"AM autoset"	"FM 2 preset <#>"
"AM autoset preset <#>"	"HD <#>" <sup>1</sup>
"AM preset <#>"	"Preset <#>"
"Browse" <sup>2</sup>	"Radio off"
"FM"	"Radio on"
"FM <87.9-107.9>"	"Set PTY"
"FM <87.9-107.9> HD <#>" <sup>1</sup>	"Tune" <sup>3</sup>
"FM autoset"	"Help"

<sup>1</sup> If available

<sup>2</sup> If you have said "Browse", refer to the "Browse" chart later in this section.

<sup>3</sup> If you have said "Tune", refer to the following "Tune" chart.

<b>"TUNE"</b>	
"<530-1710>"	"FM autoset"
"<87.9-107.9> HD <#>"	"FM autoset preset <#>"
"AM"	"FM preset <#>"
"AM <530-1710>"	"FM1"
"AM preset <#>"	"FM1 preset <#>"
"AM autoset"	"FM2"
"AM autoset preset <#>"	"FM2 preset <#>"

## MyFord Touch®

"TUNE"	
"<87.9-107.9>"	"HD <#>"
"FM"	"Preset <#>"
"FM <87.9-107.9>"	"Help"
"FM <87.9-107.9> HD <#>"	

\* If available

### SIRIUS® Satellite Radio (If Activated)



Press the lower left corner of the touchscreen, then select the SIRIUS tab.

When You Select	You Can
A memory preset area (on the right side of the screen)	Save a station by pressing and holding one of the memory preset areas. There is a brief mute while the station is being saved, then sound returns when it's done.
Direct Tune	Enter the desired satellite channel number using the on-screen keypad.
SIRIUS	Press repeatedly to change SIRIUS modes (SIRIUS 1, 2 or 3).
ALERT	Save the current song, artist, or team as a favorite. The system alerts you when it plays again on any SIRIUS channel.
Browse	View a list of all available stations. Scroll and select the desired station. You can also lock or skip unwanted channels or view the song/artist on other stations.
Scan	Hear a brief sampling of channels.
Replay	Replay audio on the current channel. You can replay approximately 45 minutes of audio as long as you have remained tuned to the current station. If you change stations, the previous audio is erased. · Press and release the seek buttons to hear the previous or next song.

## MyFord Touch®

When You Select	You Can
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Press and hold the seek buttons to advance to reverse or fast forward in the current track.</li> <li>· Press play or pause to play or pause the audio.</li> <li>· Press Replay again to return to live audio if you had been using the replay feature to replay audio.</li> </ul>
Options	<p>Adjust more audio system settings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· <b>Sound Settings</b> adjusts Bass, Treble, Midrange, Balance and Fade, THX Deep Note Demo (if equipped), DSP (if equipped), Occupancy Mode (if equipped), and Speed Compensated Volume settings.</li> <li>· <b>Set Category for Seek/Scan</b> allows you to select a category of music you would like to search for and then choose to either seek or scan for the stations.</li> <li>· <b>Parental Lockout</b> allows you to lock and unlock channels, change or reset your PIN or unlock all channels. To use this feature you need your initial PIN which is 1234.</li> <li>· <b>Artist/Title Alerts*</b> allows you to select Artists and Titles that you would like the system to alert you to when they are playing on other channels. Press <b>Edit Alerts</b> to delete or turn off alerts. You can also set all alerts to on or off. When an alert appears on the screen, you can choose to <b>Tune</b> to the channel, to <b>Cancel</b> the alert or to <b>Disable Alerts</b>. If you are listening to a sporting event, you can save your favorite teams so that the system can alert you when they are playing on a satellite radio channel.</li> </ul>
Electronic Serial Number (ESN)	This is required when communicating with SIRIUS about your account.

\* SIRIUS does not support the Alert feature on all channels. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for Alert feature variation.

### SIRIUS Satellite Radio Information

**Note:** SIRIUS reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.



## MyFord Touch®



E142593

SIRIUS satellite radio is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts a variety of music, sports, news, weather, traffic and entertainment programming. Your factory-installed SIRIUS satellite radio system includes hardware and a limited subscription term which begins on the date of sale or lease of the vehicle. Refer to your authorized dealer for availability.

For more information on extended subscription terms (a service fee is required), the online media player and a complete list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, and other features, please visit [www.siriusxm.com](http://www.siriusxm.com) in the United States, [www.sirius.ca](http://www.sirius.ca) in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

### **Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN)**

You need your ESN to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. The ESN is found on the System Information Screen (SR ESN:XXXXXXXXXXXX). To access your ESN, touch the bottom left corner of the touchscreen. Touch SIRIUS, Options, then ESN.

### **SIRIUS Satellite Radio Reception Factors and Troubleshooting**

Potential Reception Issues	
Antenna obstructions	For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and the audio system may mute.
Satellite radio signal interference	Your display may show ACQUIRING... to indicate the interference and the audio system may mute.

## MyFord Touch®

---

Troubleshooting Tips		
Radio Display	Cause	Action
ACQUIRING...	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	None. This message should disappear shortly.
Sat Fault/SIRIUS System Failure	Internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear shortly, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See your authorized dealer for service.
Invalid Channel	Channel no longer available.	Tune to another channel or choose another preset.
Unsubscribed Channel	Subscription not available for this channel.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel, or tune to another channel.
No Signal	Loss of signal from the SIRIUS satellite or SIRIUS tower to the vehicle antenna.	The signal is currently being blocked. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
Updating	Update of channel programming in progress.	None. The process may take up to three minutes.
Call SIRIUS 1-888-539-7474	Satellite service has been deactivated by SIRIUS satellite radio.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to reactivate or resolve subscription issues.
No Channels Available	All the channels in the selected category are skipped or locked.	Using the channel guide, unlock or unskip the channels.
Subscription Updated	SIRIUS has updated the channels available for your vehicle.	None.

# MyFord Touch®

## SIRIUS Satellite Radio Voice Commands



If you are listening to SIRIUS satellite radio, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.

If you are not listening to SIRIUS satellite radio, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "SIRIUS", then any of the following commands.

"SIRIUS"	
"<0-223>"	"SAT 2 preset <#>"
"<Channel name>"	"SAT 3"
"Preset <#>"	"SAT 3 preset <#>"
"SAT"	"SIRIUS off"
"SAT preset <#>"	"SIRIUS on"
"SAT 1"	"Sports game" <sup>1</sup>
"SAT 1 Preset <#>"	"Tune" <sup>2</sup>
"SAT 2"	"Help"

<sup>1</sup> Late availability. If you have said "Sports game", refer to the following "Sports game" chart.

<sup>2</sup> If you have said "Tune", refer to the following "Tune" chart.

"SPORTS GAME"
"Tune to the <college name> game"
"Tune to the <team city> game"
"Tune to the <team city> <team name> game"
"Tune to the <team name> game"
"Help"

## MyFord Touch®

<b>"TUNE"</b>
"<0-223>"
"<Channel Name>"
"Preset <#>"
"SAT"
"SAT 1"
"SAT 1 preset <#>"
"SAT 2"
"SAT 2 preset <#>"
"SAT 3"
"SAT 3 preset <#>"
"Help"

### CD



Press the lower left corner of the touchscreen, then select the CD tab.

When You Select	You Can
Repeat	Repeat the currently playing track.
Shuffle	Play the tracks in random order.
Scan	Hear a brief sampling of all available tracks.
More Info	See disc information.
Browse	Look through all available audio sources.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· <b>Sound</b> Adjust Bass, Treble, Midrange, Balance and Fade, THX Deep Note Demo (if equipped), DSP (if equipped), Occupancy Mode (if equipped), and Speed Compensated Volume settings.</li> <li>· <b>Compression</b> Access compression settings.</li> </ul>

## MyFord Touch®

You can also advance and reverse the current track or current folder (if applicable).

### CD Voice Commands



If you are listening to a CD, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.

If you are not listening to a CD, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "CD", then any of the following commands.

"CD"
"Pause"
"Play"
"Play next track"
"Play previous track"
"Play track <1-512>"
"Repeat"
"Repeat folder"
"Repeat off"
"Repeat track"
"Shuffle"
"Shuffle CD"
"Shuffle folder"
"Shuffle off"
"Help"

\*WMA or MP3 only

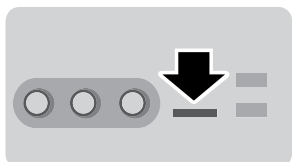
# MyFord Touch®

## SD Card Slot and USB Port

### SD Card

**Note:** Your SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, press the card in and the system ejects it. Do not attempt to pull the card to remove it as this could cause damage.

The card slot can also be used for your navigation system (if equipped). See **Navigation** (page 371).



E142619

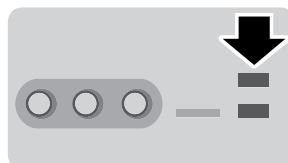
The SD card slot is located either in the center console or behind a small access door in the instrument panel. To access and play music from your device, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen.



E142620

SD logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.

### USB Port



E142621

The USB ports are located either in the center console or behind a small access door in the instrument panel. To access and play music from your device, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen.

This feature allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and also charge devices if they support this feature.

### Playing Music from Your Device



Insert your device and select the USB or SD Card tab once the system recognizes it. You can choose from the following options:

## MyFord Touch®

When You Select	You Can
Repeat	Repeat the currently playing song or album.
Shuffle	Play music on the selected album or folder in random order.
Browse	Browse the contents of the device. It also allows you to search and play by genre, artist, album, etc.
Similar Music	Choose music similar to that which is currently playing.
Options	<p>Select more settings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· <b>Sound Settings</b> allows you to adjust Bass, Treble, Midrange, Balance and Fade, THX Deep note demo (if equipped), DSP (if equipped), Occupancy mode (if equipped), and speed compensated volume.</li> <li>· <b>Media Player Settings</b> allows you to select more settings.</li> <li>· <b>Device Information</b> displays software and firmware information about the currently-connected media device.</li> <li>· <b>Update Media Index</b> indexes the device each time it is connected to make sure you have the latest voice commands available for all media on the device.</li> </ul> <p>Media Player settings include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· <b>Autoplay:</b> When on, the system automatically switches to the media source when first connected so you can listen to music that has been indexed. When off, the system does not automatically switch to the media source.</li> <li>· <b>Bluetooth Devices:</b> Connect, disconnect, add or delete a device. Also set a device as your favorite so the system automatically tries to connect to it at every ignition cycle.</li> <li>· <b>Gracenote Database Info:</b> View the version level of the Gracenote Database.</li> <li>· <b>Gracenote Media Management:</b> When on, this feature gets metadata information from the Gracenote Database for your music files. This overrides information from your device. The feature default is off.</li> <li>· <b>Cover Art Priority:</b> This feature retrieves cover art for your music files from either your device or the Gracenote Database. The feature default is Device.</li> </ul>
Media Device Information	Displays information about the device, if connected and available.
Text Display	Allows you to choose how you would like the information to display on-screen.

# MyFord Touch®

To view song information such as Title, Artist, File, Folder, Album, and Genre, touch the on-screen album art. You can also press **What's Playing?** to hear how the system pronounces the current band and song. This can be helpful when using voice commands to make sure the system correctly plays your request.

## USB and SD Card Voice Commands



If you are listening to a USB device or an SD card, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.

If you are not listening to a USB device or an SD card, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "USB" or "SD card", then any of the following commands.

"USB" or "SD CARD"	
"Browse" <sup>1</sup>	"Play podcast episode <name>"
"Next"	"Play similar music"
"Pause"	"Play song <name>"
"Play"	"Play TV show episode <name>" <sup>2</sup>
"Play album <name>"	"Play video <name>" <sup>2</sup>
"Play all"	"Play video podcast episode <name>" <sup>2</sup>
"Play artist <name>"	"Play video playlist <name>" <sup>2</sup>
"Play audiobook <name>"	"Previous"
"Play author <name>"	"Repeat all"
"Play composer <name>"	"Repeat off"
"Play folder <name>"	"Repeat one"
"Play genre <name>"	"Shuffle"
"Play movie <name>" <sup>2</sup>	"Shuffle off"
"Play playlist <name>"	"What's this?"
"Play podcast <name>"	"Help"

<sup>1</sup> If you have said you would like to browse your USB or SD card, the system prompts you to specify what you would like to browse. When prompted, refer to the following "Browse" chart.

<sup>2</sup> These commands are only available in USB mode and are device-dependent.



## MyFord Touch®

"BROWSE"	
"Album <name>"	"All video podcasts"*
"All albums"	"All videos"*
"All artists"	"Artist <name>"
"All audiobooks"	"Audiobook <name>"
"All authors"	"Author <name>"
"All composers"	"Composer <name>"
"All folders"	"Folder <name>"
"All genres"	"Genre <name>"
"All movies"*	"Playlist <name>"
"All music videos"*	"Podcast <name>"
"All playlists"	"TV show <name>"*
"All podcasts"	"Video <name>"*
"All songs"	"Video playlist <name>"*
"All TV shows"*	"Video podcast <name>"*
"All video playlists"*	"Help"

\* These commands are only available in USB mode and are device-dependent.

### Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod®, Zune™, "plays from device" players, and most USB drives. Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV and AAC.

It is also able to organize your indexed media from your playing device by metadata tags. Metadata tags are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files which provide information about the file.

If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, SYNC may classify the empty metadata tags as **Unknown**.

# MyFord Touch®

In order to playback video from your iPod® or iPhone®, (if compatible), you MUST have a special combination USB/RCA composite video cable (available for purchase from Apple®). When the cable is connected to your iPod® or iPhone®, plug the other end into both the RCA jacks and the USB port.

## Bluetooth Audio

Your system allows you to stream audio over your vehicle's speakers from your connected, Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone.



To access, press the lower left corner on the touchscreen, then select the BT tab.

## Bluetooth Audio Voice Commands

**Note:** If your Bluetooth device supports streaming metadata, all the commands below are available. If your device does not, only "Next song", "Pause", "Play" and "Previous song" are available.



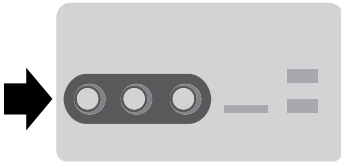
If you are listening to a Bluetooth audio device, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the commands in the following chart.

If you are not listening to a Bluetooth audio device, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "Bluetooth Audio", then any of the commands in the following chart.

"BLUETOOTH AUDIO"		
"Browse album <name>"	"Browse composer <name>"	"Play genre <name>"
"Browse all albums"	"Browse folder <name>"	"Play playlist <name>"
"Browse all artists"	"Browse genre <name>"	"Play podcast episode <name>"
"Browse all audiobooks"	"Browse playlist <name>"	"Play similar music"
"Browse all authors"	"Browse podcast <name>"	"Play song <name>"
"Browse all composers"	"Next"	"Previous"
"Browse all folders"	"Pause"	"Repeat all"
"Browse all genres"	"Play"	"Repeat off"
"Browse all playlists"	"Play album <name>"	"Repeat one"
"Browse all podcasts"	"Play artist <name>"	"Shuffle"
"Browse all songs"	"Play audiobook <name>"	"Shuffle album"
"Browse artist <name>"	"Play author <name>"	"Shuffle off"
"Browse audiobook <name>"	"Play composer <name>"	"What's this?"
"Browse author <name>"	"Play folder <name>"	"Help"

## A/V Inputs

**Note:** For safety reasons, connecting or adjusting the settings on your portable music player should not be attempted while the vehicle is moving. Also, the portable music player should be stored in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when the vehicle is in motion. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while the vehicle is in motion.



E142622

Your A/V inputs allow you to connect an auxiliary audio/video source (e.g. game systems or personal camcorders) by connecting RCA cords (not included) to these input jacks. The jacks are yellow, red and white and are located either in the center console or behind a small access door in the instrument panel.

You can also use the A/V inputs as an auxiliary input jack (AIJ) to play music from your portable music player over your vehicle's speakers. Plug in your one-eighth inch (3.5 millimeter) RCA adapter into the two left A/V input jacks (red and white).

Press the lower left corner of the touchscreen, then select the A/V Inputs tab.

To use the auxiliary input jack feature, make sure that your portable music player is designed to be used with headphones and that it is fully charged. You also need an audio extension cable with stereo male one-eighth inch (3.5 millimeter) connectors at one end and a RCA jack at the other.

1. Begin with the vehicle parked and the radio and portable device are turned off.
2. Attach one end of the audio extension cable to the headphone output of your player and the other end into the adaptor in one of the two left A/V input jacks (white or red) inside the center console.
3. Press the lower left corner on the touchscreen. Select either a tuned station from the FM tab or the CD tab (if there is a CD already loaded into the system.) Adjust the volume to a comfortable listening level.
4. Turn the portable music player on and adjust the volume to one-half.
5. Press the lower left corner on the touchscreen. Select the A/V Input tab. (You should hear audio from your portable music player although it may be low.)
6. Adjust the sound on your portable music player until it reaches the level of the FM station or CD by switching back and forth between the controls.

In order to playback video from your iPod® or iPhone®, (if compatible), you MUST have a special combination USB/RCA composite video cable (available for purchase from Apple® ). When the cable is connected to your iPod® or iPhone®, plug the other end into both the RCA jacks and the USB port.

**Note:** Do not connect the audio input jack to a line level output. The AII only works correctly with devices that have a headphone output with a volume control.

**Note:** Do not set the portable music player's volume level higher than is necessary to match the volume of the CD or FM radio as this causes distortion and reduces sound quality.

**Note:** If the music sounds distorted at lower listening levels, turn the portable music player volume down. If the problems persists, replace or recharge the batteries in the portable music player.

**Note:** The portable music player must be controlled in the same manner when it is used with headphones as the AII does not provide control (play, pause, etc.) over the attached portable music player.

## PHONE

Hand's-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. Once your phone is paired, you can access many options using the touchscreen or voice commands. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your mobile phone's functionality.

At a minimum, most mobile phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call
- Ending a call
- Using privacy mode
- Dialing a number
- Redial
- Call waiting notification
- Caller ID

Other features such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download are phone-dependent features. To check your phone's compatibility, refer to your phone's user manual and visit [www.SYNCMyRide.com](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com) or [www.syncmaroute.ca](http://www.syncmaroute.ca).

## Pairing Your Phone for the First Time

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

The first thing you must do to use SYNC's phone features is to pair your Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone with SYNC. This allows you to use your phone in a hands-free manner.

**Note:** Make sure the vehicle ignition and radio are turned on and that the transmission is in position **P**.

1. Touch **Add Phone** in the upper left corner of the touchscreen.
2. When prompted, select **Add**.
3. Select **Add Device**.
4. Make sure that Bluetooth is set to **On** and that your mobile phone is in the proper mode. Refer to your phone's user guide if necessary.

# MyFord Touch®

- When prompted on your phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by SYNC in the radio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful and asks you if you want to download your phone book.

Depending on your phone's capability, you may be prompted with additional options. For more information on your phone's capability, refer to your phone's user guide and visit the website.

## Pairing Subsequent Phones

**Note:** Make sure the vehicle ignition and radio are turned on and that the transmission is in position **P**.

- Press the phone corner of the touchscreen, **Settings, BT Devices**, then **Add Device**.
- Make sure that Bluetooth is set to **On** and that your mobile phone is in the proper mode. Refer to your phone's user guide if necessary.
- When prompted on your phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by SYNC on the screen. The display indicates when the pairing is successful. The system asks you if you want to download your phone book.

Depending on your phone's capability, you may be prompted with additional options. For more information on your phone's capability, refer to your phone's user guide and visit the website.

## Making Calls



Press the voice button. When prompted, say "Call <name>" or say "Dial", the desired number.



To end the call or exit phone mode, press and hold the phone button.

## Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Call information appears in the display if it's available.



Accept the call by pressing **Accept** on the touchscreen or by pressing this phone button on your steering wheel controls.



Reject the call by pressing **Reject** on the touchscreen or by pressing and holding this phone button on your steering wheel controls.

Ignore the call by doing nothing. SYNC logs it as a missed call.

## Phone Menu Options

Press the top left corner on your touchscreen to select from the following options:

When You Select	You Can
Phone	Access the on-screen numerical pad to enter a number and place a call.

# MyFord Touch®

When You Select	You Can
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During an active call, you can also choose to mute the call, put it on hold, activate privacy (returns the call to your mobile phone), join two calls or end the call.</li> </ul>
Quick Dial	Select and call contacts stored in your phone book contacts and call history folder.
Phone Book	<p>Access and call any contacts in your previously downloaded phone book. The system places the entries in alphabetical categories summarized at the top of the screen.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To turn on contact picture settings (if your device supports this feature), press <b>Phone, Settings, Manage Phone Book, Download Photos from Phone Book</b>, then select <b>On</b>.</li> <li>Certain smartphones may support transferring street addresses when listed with phone book contact information. If this feature is supported, you can select and use these addresses as destinations and also save them as favorites.</li> </ul>
Call History	<p>Access any previously dialed, received or missed calls while your Bluetooth-enabled phone was connected to SYNC. You can also choose to save these to <b>Favorites</b> or <b>Quick Dial</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This is a phone-dependent feature. If your phone does not support downloading call history using Bluetooth, SYNC keeps track of calls made with the SYNC system.</li> </ul>
Messaging	Send text messages using your touchscreen. See the Text Messaging section for more information.
Settings	Access various phone settings such as turning your Bluetooth on and off and managing your phone book. See the Phone Settings section for more information.

## Text Messaging

**Note:** Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are phone-dependent features.

**Note:** Certain features in text messaging are speed-dependent and cannot be completed when the vehicle is traveling at speeds over 3 mph (5 km/h).

**Note:** SYNC does not download read text messages from your phone.

You can send and receive text messages using Bluetooth, read them aloud and translate text messaging acronyms such as "LOL".

1. Touch the top left corner of the display to access the **Phone** menu.
2. Select **Messaging**.

## MyFord Touch®

---

3. Choose from the following:

- Listen
- Dial
- Send Text
- View
- Delete

### Composing a Text Message

**Note:** *Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are phone-dependent features.*

**Note:** *This is a speed-dependent and cannot be completed when the vehicle is traveling at speeds over 3 mph (5 km/h).*

1. Touch the top left corner of the display to access the **Phone** menu.
2. Select **Messaging**, then **Send Text**.
3. You can select **Edit Text** and use the system keyboard to create a text message or select from the following options:

Text Message Options
Call me later
Can you give me a call?
I just left, I'll be there soon
I'll call you back in a few minutes
I'll call you when I get there
I'm ahead of schedule, so I'll be there early
I'm on my way
I'm outside
I'm running a few minutes late
LOL
No
OK
Stuck in traffic
Thanks
Yes

# MyFord Touch®

## Receiving a Text Message

**Note:** If you select *View* and your vehicle is traveling over 3 mph (5 km/h), the system offers to read the message to you instead of allowing you to view it while driving.

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the screen displays a pop-up with the caller name and ID, if supported by your phone. You can press:

- **View** to view the text message.
- **Listen** for SYNC to read the message to you.

- **Dial** to call the contact.
- **Ignore** to exit the screen.

## Phone Settings

Press **Phone**, then **Settings** or **Menu, Settings**, then **Phone** to select from the following settings:

When You Select	You Can
Bluetooth Devices	Connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite.
Bluetooth On/Off	Turn Bluetooth on or off.
Do not disturb	Have all calls go directly to your voice mail and not ring in the vehicle cabin. With this feature turned on, text message notifications are also suppressed and do not ring inside the cabin.
911 Assist	Turn 911 Assist™ on or off. See <b>Information</b> (page 358).
Phone ringer	Select what ring tone you would like to hear when you receive a call. Choose from possible system ring tones, your currently paired phone's ring tone, a beep, text-to-speech or if you would like the notification to be silent.
Text message notification	Select how you would like to be notified when you receive a text message, if supported by your phone. Choose from possible system alert tones, text-to-speech or silent.
Internet Data Connection*	Use this screen to make adjustments to your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the PAN (personal area network) or to turn off your connection. You can also choose to make adjustments to your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming or query on connect. Press <b>?</b> for more information.



# MyFord Touch®

When You Select	You Can
Manage Phonebook	Access features such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook.
Display call history	Display call history.

\* If compatible.

## Phone Voice Commands



Press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands:

"PHONE"	
"Bluetooth off"	"Hold call off" <sup>1</sup>
"Bluetooth on"	"Hold on" <sup>1</sup>
"Call"	"Join calls" <sup>1</sup>
"Call <name>"	"Listen to text messages"
"Call <name> at home"	"Messages" <sup>2</sup>
"Call <name> at work"	"Mute call" <sup>1</sup>
"Call <name> on cell"	"Pair phone"
"Call <name> on other"	"Privacy on" <sup>1</sup>
"Call voicemail"	"Reply to text messages"
"Dial"	"Turn ringer off"
"Do not disturb off"	"Turn ringer on"
"Do not disturb on"	"Unmute call"

## MyFord Touch®

"PHONE"	
"Forward text messages"	"Help"
"Go to hands free" <sup>1</sup>	

<sup>1</sup> These commands are only available during an active call.

<sup>2</sup> If you say "Messages", see the following "Messages" chart for additional commands.

"MESSAGES"
"Call"
"Forward text messages"
"Listen to text message <#>"
"Listen to text messages"
"Reply to text messages"
"Help"

## INFORMATION

Under the Information menu, you can access features such as SYNC® Services, SIRIUS® Travel Link™ and SYNC Apps or view your calendar and system notifications.

If your vehicle is equipped with the navigation system, press the Information button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with the navigation system, press the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

## SYNC Services (If Equipped, U.S. Only)

**Note:** SYNC Services requires activation prior to use. Visit [www.SYNCMYride.com](http://www.SYNCMYride.com) to register and check your eligibility for complimentary services. Standard phone and message rates may apply. Subscription may be required. You must also have the active SYNC Services Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone paired and connected to the system in order to connect to, and use, SYNC Services. See **Phone** (page 352).

**Note:** This feature does not function properly if you have enabled caller ID blocking on your mobile phone. Make sure your mobile phone is not blocking caller ID before using SYNC Services.

**Note:** *The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle, and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions. Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of errors, changes in roads, traffic conditions or driving conditions.*

**Note:** *When you connect, the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction and speed to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches you request. Further, to provide the services you request and for continuous improvement, the service may collect and record call details and voice communications. For more information, see SYNC Services Terms and Conditions at [www.SYNCMyRide.com](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com). If you do not want Ford or its service providers to collect the vehicle travel information or other information identified in the Terms and Conditions, do not activate or use the service.*

SYNC Services uses advanced vehicle sensors, integrated GPS technology and comprehensive map and traffic data, to give you personalized traffic reports, precise turn-by-turn directions, business search, news, sports, weather and more. For a complete list of services, or to learn more, please visit [www.SYNCMyRide.com](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com).

## Connecting to SYNC Services Using Voice Commands

1. Press the voice button.

2. When prompted, say "Services". This initiates an outgoing call to SYNC Services using your paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone.
3. Once you're connected to the service, follow the voice prompts to request the desired service such as traffic or directions. You can also say "What are my choices?" to receive a complete list of available services from which to choose.
4. Say "Services" to return to the services main menu or for help, say "Help".

## Connecting to SYNC Services Using the Touchscreen

If your vehicle is equipped with the navigation system, press the Information button.

If your vehicle is not equipped with the navigation system, press the green tab on your touchscreen.

1. Select **Connect to Services** to initiate an outgoing call to SYNC Services using your phone.
2. Once connected, follow the voice prompts to request your desired service such as traffic or directions. You can also say "What are my choices?" to receive a complete list of available services from which to choose.
3. Say "Services" to return to the services main menu or for help, say "Help".

## Receiving Turn-by-Turn Directions

1. When connected to SYNC Services, say "Directions" or "Business search". To find the closest business or type of business to your current location just say "Business search", then "Search near me". If you need further assistance in finding a location you can say "Operator" at any time within a Directions or Business search to speak

# MyFord Touch®

---

with a live operator. You may also be prompted to speak with an operator. The live operator can assist you by searching for businesses by name or by category, residential addresses by street address or by name or specific street intersections. Operator Assist is a feature of your SYNC Services subscription. For more information on Operator Assist visit [www.SYNCMyRide.com/support](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com/support).

2. Follow the voice prompts to select your destination. After the route download is complete, the phone call is automatically ended.

If your vehicle is not equipped with the navigation feature:

- Turn-by-turn directions appear in the infotainment display, in the status bar of your touchscreen system and also on the SYNC Services screen. You also receive driving instructions from audible prompts.
- When on an active route, you can select **Route Summary** or **Route Status** using the touchscreen controls or voice commands to view the **Route Summary Turn List** or the **Route Status ETA**. You can also turn voice guidance on or off, cancel the route or update the route.

If you miss a turn, SYNC automatically asks if you want the route updated. When prompted, say "yes" and a new route is delivered to your vehicle.

If your vehicle is equipped with the navigation feature, SYNC Services downloads your requested destination to the navigation system. The navigation system then calculates the route and provides driving instructions. See **Navigation** (page 371).

## Disconnecting from SYNC Services

1. Press and hold the hang-up phone button on the steering wheel.
2. Say "Good-bye" from the SYNC Services main menu.

## MyFord Touch®

<b>Traffic, Directions and Information options</b>	
Personalizing	You can personalize your services feature to provide quicker access to your most used or favorite information. You can save address points such as, work or home. You can also save favorite information like sports teams, such as Detroit Lions, or a news category. To learn more, log onto <a href="http://www.SYNCMyRide.com">www.SYNCMyRide.com</a> .
Push to interrupt	Press the voice button at any time (while you are connected to SYNC TDI Services) to interrupt a voice prompt or an audio clip (such as a sports report) and say your voice command.
Portable	Your subscription is associated with your Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone number, not your VIN (Vehicle Identification Number). You can pair and connect your phone to any vehicle equipped with Traffic, Directions and Information and continue enjoying your personalized services.

### SYNC Services Voice Commands



When a route has been downloaded (non-navigation systems), press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands:

<b>"SERVICES"</b>
"Cancel route"
"Navigation voice off"
"Navigation voice on"
"Next turn"
"Route status"
"Route summary"
"Services"
"Update route"
"Help"

# MyFord Touch®

## SIRIUS Travel Link (If Equipped)

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** In order to use SIRIUS Travel Link, your vehicle must be equipped with navigation and your navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot.

**Note:** A paid subscription is required to access and use these features. Go to [www.siriusxm.com/travellink](http://www.siriusxm.com/travellink) for more information.

**Note:** Visit [www.siriusxm.com/traffic#](http://www.siriusxm.com/traffic#) and click on **Coverage map and details** for a complete listing of all traffic areas covered by SIRIUS Travel Link.

**Note:** Neither SIRIUS nor Ford is responsible for any errors or inaccuracies in the SIRIUS Travel Link services or its use in vehicles.

SIRIUS Travel Link (if activated) can help you locate the best gas prices, find movie listings, get current traffic alerts, access the current weather map, get accurate ski conditions and scores to current sports games.

Press the Information button, select Sirius Travel Link, then choose from any of the following services:

When You Select	You Can
Traffic On Route	Identify traffic incidents on your route, nearby your vehicle's current location or near any of your favorite places (if programmed).
Traffic Nearby	
Fuel Prices	View fuel prices at stations close to your vehicle's location or on an active navigation route.
Weather	View the nearby weather, current weather, or the 5-day forecast for the chosen area. Select <b>Map</b> to see the weather map which can show storms, radar information, charts and winds. Select <b>Area</b> to select from a listing of weather locations.
Sports Info.	View scores and schedules from a variety of sports. You can also save up to 10 favorite teams for easier access. The score automatically refreshes when a game is in progress.
Movie Listings	View nearby movie theaters and their show times (if available).
Ski Conditions	View ski conditions for a specific area.

# MyFord Touch®

## SIRIUS Travel Link Voice Commands



Press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands:

"SIRIUS TRAVEL LINK"
"5-day weather forecast"
"Fuel prices"
"Movie listings"
"Sports headlines"
"Sports schedules"
"Sports scores"
"Traffic"
"Weather"
"Weather map"
"Help"
* If you say "Sports headlines", "Sports schedules" or "Sports scores", you can then say any of the commands in the following chart.

Sports-related Commands*
"Baseball"
"College basketball"
"College football"
"Golf"
"MLS"
"My teams"
"NBA"
"NFL"
"NHL"

# MyFord Touch®

Sports-related Commands*
"WNBA"
"Help"
* If you want to hear headlines, schedules or scores from a particular sport, or your favorite team(s), say the sport (or team), then "headlines", "schedules" or "scores".

Additional Sports-related Voice Commands		
"Baseball headlines"	"MLS headlines"	"NBA scores"
"Baseball schedule"	"MLS schedule"	"NFL headlines"
"Baseball scores"	"MLS scores"	"NFL schedule"
"College basketball schedule"	"Motor sports headlines"	"NFL scores"
"College basketball scores"	"Motor sports order"	"NHL headlines"
"College football headlines"	"Motor sports schedule"	"NHL schedule"
"College football schedule"	"My team headlines"	"NHL scores"
"College football scores"	"My teams schedule"	"WNBA headlines"
"Golf headlines"	"My teams scores"	"WNBA schedule"
"Golf leaderboard"	"NBA headlines"	"WNBA scores"
"Golf schedule"	"NBA schedule"	"Help"

## Notifications

Press the information button, then select Notifications.

You can select a message and choose to:

- **View** the complete message
- **Delete** the message
- **Delete All** messages

This screen displays any system messages (i.e. SD card fault).

**Note:** The system alerts you to any messages by turning the information icon yellow. When the messages are read or deleted, the icon returns to white.

## Calendar

Press the information button, then select Calendar.



## 911 Assist® (If Equipped)

### WARNINGS



Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on prior to a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.



Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.



Always place your phone in a secure location in the vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a collision. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

**Note:** *The SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on prior to the incident.*

**Note:** *Before setting this feature on, ensure that you read the 911 Assist privacy notice later in this section for important information.*

**Note:** *If 911 Assist is turned on or off by any user, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is turned off, either a voice message plays or a display message/icon comes on (or both) when the vehicle is started after a previously paired phone connects.*

**Note:** *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most mobile phones, some may have trouble using this feature.*

If a crash deploys an airbag or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. For more information about 911 Assist, visit [www.SYNCMyRide.com](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com) or [www.syncmaroute.ca](http://www.syncmaroute.ca).

See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 35). Important information regarding airbag deployment is in this chapter.

See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 197). Important information regarding the fuel pump shut-off is in this chapter.

### Setting 911 Assist On

Press the Information button, Apps, 911 Assist, then On.

You can also access 911 Assist by:

- Pressing the Menu icon, Settings, Phone, then 911 Assist
- Pressing the Menu icon, Help, 911 Assist

To make sure that 911 Assist works properly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on prior to the incident.
- A Bluetooth-enabled and compatible phone has to be paired and connected to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.

# MyFord Touch®

- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

## In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (which would activate 911 Assist); however, if 911 Assist is triggered, SYNC tries to contact emergency services. If a connected phone is damaged or loses connection to SYNC, SYNC searches for, and tries to connect to, any available previously paired phone and tries to make the call to 911.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. Failure to cancel the call results in SYNC attempting to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If the call is not cancelled and a successful call is made, a pre-recorded message is played for the 911 operator, then the occupant(s) in the vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

## 911 Assist May Not Work If

- Your mobile phone or 911 Assist hardware was damaged in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) paired and connected to the system was thrown from the vehicle.

## 911 Assist Privacy Notice

Once 911 Assist is set on, it may disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators the vehicle location or other details about the vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not turn the feature on.

## Vehicle Health Report (If Equipped)

### WARNING



Always follow scheduled maintenance instructions, regularly inspect your vehicle, and seek repair for any damage or problem you suspect. Vehicle Health Report supplements, but cannot replace, normal maintenance and vehicle inspection. Vehicle Health Report only monitors certain systems that are electronically monitored by the vehicle and will not monitor or report the status of any other system, (i.e., brake lining wear). Failure to perform scheduled maintenance and regularly inspect your vehicle may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.

**Note:** *This feature is only available in the United States.*

# MyFord Touch®

**Note:** Your Vehicle Health Report feature requires activation prior to use. Visit [www.SYNCMyRide.com](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com) to register. There is no fee or subscription associated with Vehicle Health Report, but you must register to use this feature

**Note:** This feature may not function properly if you have enabled caller ID blocking on your mobile phone. Before running a report, review the Vehicle Health Report Privacy Notice.

**Note:** In order to allow a break-in period for your vehicle, you may not be able to create a Vehicle Health Report until your vehicle odometer has reached 200 miles.

**Note:** Mobile phone and SMS charges may apply when making a report.

Register for Vehicle Health Report and set your report preferences at [www.SYNCMyRide.com](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com). After registering you can request a Vehicle Health Report (inside your vehicle). Return to your account at [www.SYNCMyRide.com](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com) to view your report. You can also choose for SYNC to automatically remind you to run reports at specific mileage intervals. Mobile phone airtime usage may apply when reporting.

The system allows you to check your vehicle's overall health in the form of diagnostic report card. The Vehicle Health Report contains valuable information such as:

- Vehicle diagnostic information
- Scheduled maintenance
- Open recalls and Field Service Actions
- Unserved items from vehicle inspections by your authorized dealer

## Making a Report

To run a report by touchscreen, touch the Information button, Apps, then Vehicle Health Report.



To run a report by voice command, press the voice button on the steering wheel and, when prompted, say "Vehicle health report".

## Vehicle Health Report Privacy Notice

When you run a Vehicle Health Report, Ford Motor Company may collect your mobile phone number (to process your report request) and diagnostic information about your vehicle. Certain versions or updates to Vehicle Health Report may also collect additional vehicle information. Ford may use the vehicle information it collects for any purpose. If you do not want to disclose your mobile phone number or vehicle information, do not run the feature or set up your Vehicle Health Report profile at [www.SYNCMyRide.com](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com). Refer to [www.SYNCMyRide.com](#) (Vehicle Health Report Terms and Conditions, and Privacy Statement) for more information.

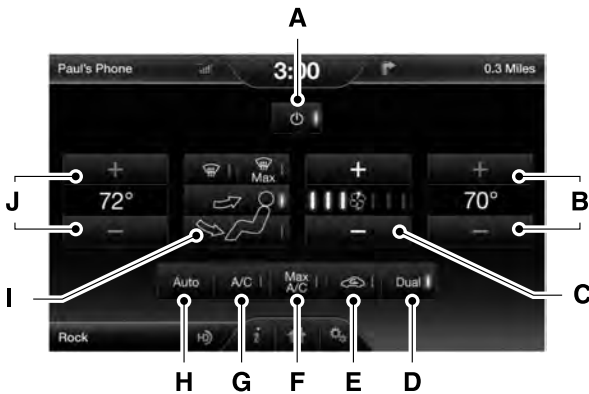
## CLIMATE



Press the lower right corner on the touchscreen to access your climate control features.

Depending on your vehicle line and option package, your climate screen may look different than what is shown here.

# MyFord Touch®



E146988

- A **Power:** Touch to turn the system on and off. Outside air cannot enter the vehicle when the system is off.
- B **Passenger settings:** Touch + or - to adjust the temperature.
- C **Fan speed:** Touch + or - to adjust fan speed.
- D **DUAL:** Touch to turn on the passenger side temperature control.
- E **Recirculated air:** Touch to turn the recirculated air on or off which may reduce the amount of time needed to cool down the interior and help reduce odors from reaching the interior. Recirculated air also engages automatically when MAX A/C or MAX defrost is selected and may be engaged manually in any airflow mode except defrost. It may also turn off in all airflow modes except MAX A/C and MAX defrost to reduce fog potential.
- F **MAX A/C:** Touch to cool the vehicle with recirculated air. Touch again for normal A/C operation. MAX A/C distributes air through instrument panel vents and may help reduce odors from entering the vehicle. MAX A/C is more economical and efficient than normal A/C mode.
- G **A/C:** Touch to turn the air conditioning on or off. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. A/C engages automatically in MAX A/C, defrost and footwell/defrost.
- H **AUTO:** Touch to engage automatic operation, then set the temperature using the temperature control. The system automatically controls fan speed, airflow distribution, A/C on or off and the use of fresh or recirculated air.

- I **Manual airflow distribution controls:Footwell/Defrost:** Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents, demister vents, footwell vents and rear seat floor vents, and provides outside air to reduce window fogging. **Panel:** Distributes air through the instrument panel vents. **Panel/Floor:** Distributes air through the instrument panel vents, demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents. **Floor:** Distributes air through the demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents. **Defrost:** Touch to clear the windshield of fog and thin ice. Touch again to return to the previous airflow selection. When on, defrost provides outside air to reduce window fogging and distributes air through the windshield defroster vents and demister vents. **MAX Defrost:** Distributes outside air through the windshield air vents. Air conditioning is automatically selected. The fan is set to the highest speed and the temperature to HI. When the air distribution is set in this position, you are unable to select recirculated air or manually adjust the fan speed and temperature control.
- J **Driver settings:** Touch + or – adjust the temperature.

## Climate Control Voice Commands



Press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands:

Climate Control Commands
"Climate automatic"
"Climate my temperature"
"Climate off"
"Climate on"
"Climate temperature <15.5-29.5> degrees"
"Climate temperature <60-85> degrees"
"Help"

There are additional climate control commands but in order to access them, you have to say "Climate" first. When the system is ready to listen, you may say any of the following commands:

## MyFord Touch®

---

<b>"CLIMATE"</b>	
"A/C off"	"Panel on"
"A/C on"	"Rear defrost on"
"Automatic"	"Rear defrost off"
"Defrost off"	"Recirc off"
"Defrost on"	"Recirc on"
"Dual off"	"Temperature"
"Floor on"	"Temperature <15.5-29.5> degrees"
"Fan decrease"	"Temperature <60-85> degrees"
"Fan increase"	"Temperature decrease"
"MAX A/C off"	"Temperature high"
"MAX A/C on"	"Temperature increase"
"My temp"	"Temperature low"
"Off"	"Windshield floor on"
"On"	"Help"
"Panel floor on"	

\* If you say "Temperature", you can then say any of the commands in the following chart.

<b>"TEMPERATURE"</b>
"<15.5-29.5> degrees"
"<60-85> degrees"
"High"
"Low"
"Help"

## NAVIGATION

**Note:** The navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot to operate the navigation system. If you need a replacement SD card, see your authorized dealer.

**Note:** The SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, just push the card in and release it. Do not attempt to pull the card out to remove it; this could cause damage.

Your navigation system is comprised of two main features, destination mode and map mode.

To set a destination, press the green corner of your touchscreen, then the Dest button when it appears. Refer to **Setting a destination** later in this chapter.

To view the navigation map and the vehicle's current location, touch the green bar in the upper right hand corner of the touchscreen, or, press Dest, then Map. refer to **Map mode** later in this chapter.

### Setting a Destination

Press the green corner of your touchscreen, then the Dest button when it appears. Choose any of the following:

Destination	
My Home	Street Address
Favorites	Intersection
Previous Destinations	City Center
Point of Interest (POI)	Map
Emergency	Previous Starting Point
Freeway Entrance/Exit	Latitude/Longitude

1. Enter the necessary information into the highlighted text fields (in any order). For address destination entry, the Go! button appears once all the necessary information has been entered. Pressing the Go! button makes the address location to appear on the map. If you choose Previous Destination, the last 20 destinations you have selected appear.
2. Select Set as Dest to make this your destination. You can also choose to set this as a waypoint (have the system route to this point on the way to your current destination) or save it as a favorite. Any Avoid Areas selections are also considered in route calculation.
3. Choose from up to three different types of routes, then select Start Route.
  - Fastest: Uses the fastest moving roads possible.
  - Shortest: Uses the shortest distance possible.
  - Eco (EcoRoute): Uses the most fuel efficient route.

## MyFord Touch®

You can cancel the route or have the system demo the route for you. Select Route Prefs to set route preferences like avoiding freeways, toll roads, ferries and car trains as well as to use or not use HOV lanes. (HOV lanes are High Occupancy Vehicle Lanes also known as carpool or diamond lanes. These lanes are reserved for people who ride in buses, vanpools or carpools.)

**Note:** *If Start Route button is not pressed and the vehicle is driven on a recognized road, the system defaults to the fastest route option and begins guidance.*

During route guidance, the "talking bubble" icon that appears in the upper right navigation corner (green bar) can be pressed if the user wants the system to repeat a route guidance instruction. Instructions decrease with each press.

### Point of Interest (POI) Categories

Your system offers a variety of POI (Points of Interest) categories.

Main Categories	
Food/Drink & Dining	Automotive
Travel & Transportation	Shopping
Financial	Entertainment & Arts
Emergency	Recreation & Sports
Community	Government
Health & Medicine	Domestic Services

Subcategories
Restaurant
Golf
Parking
Home & Garden
Personal Care Services
Auto Dealership
Govt Office
Public Transit
Education



To expand these listings, press the + in front of the POI listing.

The system also allows you to sort the POIs alphabetically, by distance or by cityseekr listings (if available).

## cityseekr

**Note:** *cityseekr point of interest (POI) information is limited to approximately 154 cities (132 in the U.S., 13 in Canada and 9 in Mexico).*



E142634

cityseekr, when available, is a service which provides additional information about certain POIs such as restaurants, hotels and attractions.

When you have selected a POI, the location and information appear, such as address and phone number. If the POI is listed with cityseekr, you also see information such as a brief description, check-in and check-out times, when the restaurant is open, etc.

Press More Information for a longer review, a list of services and facilities, the average room or meal price as well as the website. This screen displays the POI icon such as:



Hotel



Coffeehouse



Food & Drink



Nightlife



Attraction



This icon appears when your selection exists in multiple categories within the system.

When you are viewing additional information for hotels, cityseekr will also tell you if the hotel has certain services and facilities using icons.

For restaurants, cityseekr can provide information such as star rating, average cost, review, handicap access, hours of operation, and website address.

For hotels, cityseekr can provide information such as star rating, price category, review, check in/out times, hotel service icons and website address.

## Setting Your Navigation Preferences

Select settings for the system to take into account when planning your route.



Press the icon at the bottom of the Home screen, then select Settings, then Navigation.

# MyFord Touch®

When You Select	You Can
Map Preferences	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Turn breadcrumbs on and off.</li> <li>· Choose how you want to view the turn list (top-to-bottom or bottom-to-top).</li> <li>· Set the automatic parking POI notification. (When parking POI notification is on, parking POI icons display on the map when you get close to your destination. This may not be very useful in dense areas, and may clutter the map if other POIs are also set for display.)</li> </ul>
Route Preferences	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Avoid freeways, toll roads, ferries and car trains when planning your route.</li> <li>· Use HOV lanes (if available), and have the system always select the shortest distance, fastest time or most economical route.</li> </ul>
Navigation Preferences	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Choose prompts to be either voice or tone only.</li> <li>· Have the system automatically fill in the state and province based on the information already entered into the system.</li> </ul>
Traffic Preferences	<p>Choose how you want the system to handle traffic problems along your route.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· <b>Automatic:</b> Have the system reroute you to avoid traffic incidents that develop and impact the current route (no notification is provided).</li> <li>· <b>Manual:</b> Have the system always provide a traffic alert notification for traffic incidents along the planned route. You have a choice to accept or ignore the notification before the route deviation is made.</li> </ul>
Avoid Areas	<p>Choose areas which you want the system to avoid when calculating a route for you. Press <b>Add</b> to select a category. Once you make a selection, the system tries to avoid the area(s) if possible for all routes. To delete a selection, choose the listing on the screen; when the screen changes to <b>Avoid Areas Edit</b>, press <b>Delete</b> at the bottom right of the screen.</p>

## Map Mode

Press the green bar in the upper right area of the touchscreen to view map mode. Map mode shows advanced viewing comprised of both 2D city maps as well as 3D landmarks (when available).

2D city maps show detailed outlines of buildings, visible land use and land elements and detailed railway infrastructure for the most essential cities around the globe. These maps also contain features such as town blocks, building footprints, and railways.

# MyFord Touch®

3D landmarks appear as clear, visible objects which are typically recognizable and have a certain tourist value. The 3D landmarks appear in 3D map mode only.



E142641

Change the appearance of the map display by repeatedly pressing the arrow button in the upper left corner of the screen. It toggles between three different map modes: Heading up, North up, and 3D.



**Heading up (2D map)** always shows the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen.

This view is available for map scales up to 2.5 mi (4 km). For larger map scales, this setting is remembered, but the map is shown in North up only. If the scale returns below this level, then Heading up is restored.



**North up (2D map)** always shows the northern direction to be upward on the screen.



**3D map mode** provides an elevated perspective of the map. This viewing angle can be adjusted

and the map can be rotated 180 degrees by dragging your finger along the shaded bar with arrows at the bottom of the map.



**Re-centering the map** can be done by pressing this icon whenever you scroll the map

away from your vehicle's current location.

## Map Icons



**Vehicle mark** shows current location of the vehicle. It stays in the center of the map display, except when in scroll mode.



**Scroll cursor** allows you to scroll the map; the icon is fixed in the center of the screen. The map position closest to the cursor is in a window on the top center part of the screen.



**Address book entry default icon(s)** indicate the location on the map of an address book entry.

This is the default symbol shown after the entry has been stored to the Address Book by any method other than the map. A different icon can be selected from the 22 icons available; each icon can be used more than once.



**Home** indicates the location on the map currently stored as the home position. Only one entry from the Address Book can be saved as Home. This icon cannot be changed.



**POI (Point Of Interest) icons** can be displayed on the map and can be turned on or off. There are about 56 subcategories of POIs that can be selected to be displayed on the map one at a time.



**Starting point** indicates the starting point of a planned route.



**Waypoint** indicates the location of a waypoint on the map. The number inside the circle is different for each waypoint and represents the position of the waypoint in the route list.

# MyFord Touch®



**Destination symbol** indicates the ending point of a planned route.



**Next maneuver point** indicates the location of the next turn on the planned route.



**No GPS symbol** indicates that insufficient GPS satellite signals are available for accurate map positioning. This icon may be intermittently displayed under normal operation in an area with poor GPS access.

## Quick-touch Buttons

When in map mode, touch anywhere on the map display to access the following options:

When You Select	You Can
Set as Dest	Select a scrolled location on the map as your destination. (You may scroll the map by pressing your index finger on the map display. When you reach the desired location, simply let go and then press Set as Dest.)
Set as Waypoint	Set the current location as a waypoint.
Save to Favorites	Save the current location to your favorites.
POI Icons On/Off	Select POI icons to be displayed on the map. Up to three icons can be selected for display on the map at the same time.
Cancel Route	Cancel the active route.
View/Edit Route	Access these features when a route is active: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• View route</li><li>• Edit destination/waypoints</li><li>• Edit turn list</li><li>• Detour</li><li>• Edit route preferences</li><li>• Edit traffic preferences</li><li>• Cancel route</li></ul>

# MyFord Touch®



E142656

Rotate the map view by swiping your finger across the shaded bar with the arrows.

Navteq is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you may report them directly to Navteq by going to <http://mapreporter.navteq.com>. Navteq evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

## Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase through your dealership, by calling 1-800-NAVMAPS (in Mexico, call 01-800-557-5539) or going to [www.navigation.com/ford](http://www.navigation.com/ford). You need to specify the make and model of your vehicle to determine if there is an update available.

## Navigation Voice Commands



When in navigation mode, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. After the tone, say any of the following commands:

Navigation System Voice Commands	
"Cancel next waypoint" <sup>1</sup>	"Navigation" <sup>3</sup>
"Cancel route" <sup>1</sup>	"Repeat instruction"
"Destination" <sup>2</sup>	"Show 3D"
"Destination <nametag>"	"Show heading up"
"Destination <POI category>"	"Show map"
"Destination favorites"	"Show north up"
"Destination home"	"Show route" <sup>1</sup>
"Destination intersection"	"Show turn list" <sup>1</sup>
"Destination nearest <POI category>"	"Voice off"
"Destination nearest POI"	"Voice on"
"Destination play nametags"	"Voice volume decrease"
"Destination POI"	"Voice volume increase"

## MyFord Touch®

Navigation System Voice Commands	
"Destination POI category"	"Where am I?"
"Destination previous destination"	"Zoom in"
"Destination street address"	"Zoom out"
"Detour"	"Help"

<sup>1</sup> These commands are only available when a navigation route is active.

<sup>2</sup> If you say "Destination", you can then say any command in the following "Destination" chart.

<sup>3</sup> If you say "Navigation", you can then say any command in the following "Navigation" chart.

"DESTINATION"
"<nametag>"
"<POI category>"
"Favorites"
"Home"
"Intersection"
"Nearest <POI category>"
"Nearest POI"
"Play nametags"
"POI category"
"Previous destination"
"Street address"
"Help"

## MyFord Touch®

---

"NAVIGATION"
"Destination"
"Zoom city"
"Zoom country"
"Zoom minimum"
"Zoom maximum"
"Zoom province"
"Zoom state"
"Zoom street"
"Zoom to <distance>"
"Help"
* If you say "Destination", you can then say any command in the "Destination" chart.

If your vehicle is equipped with the SD card navigation feature, you have the ability to enter in a street address using a feature called **One-Shot Destination Street Address**. When you say either "Navigation destination street address" or "Destination street address", the system asks you to say the full address. The system displays an example on-screen. You can then speak the address naturally, such as "One two three four Main Street, Anytown".

## Appendices

---

### END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

#### SYNC® End User License Agreement (EULA)

- You have acquired a device ("DEVICE") that includes software licensed by FORD MOTOR COMPANY from an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation ("MS"). Those installed software products of MS origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("MS SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The MS SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY. The additional software and systems of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("FORD SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The FORD SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.

- The MS SOFTWARE and/or FORD SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by third party software and service suppliers. The additional software and services of third party origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE, FORD SOFTWARE and THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE hereinafter collectively and individually will be referred to as "SOFTWARE".

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICE, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICE and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.



# Appendices

---

## Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICE and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY or MS may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Security Updates/Digital Rights Management:** Content owners use the WMDRM technology included in your DEVICE to protect their intellectual property, included copyrighted content. Portions of the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE use WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the SOFTWARE's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. This action does not affect unprotected content. When your DEVICE downloads licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.

## Appendices

---

- **Consent to Use of Data:** You agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may collect and use technical information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.

- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICE.

- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates,

supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components").

If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply.

If MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that the MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be the licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

## Appendices

---

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The MS SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites through the use of the SOFTWARE. The third party sites are not under the control of MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent. Neither MS nor Microsoft Corporation nor their affiliates nor their designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICE operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and assumes any risk associated with the use of the DEVICE.

### **UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:**

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICE on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICE as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

### **INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:**

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or their affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service providers, their affiliates and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information, see <http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/>.

## Appendices

---

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, third party software or service providers, their affiliates or suppliers.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Product support for the SOFTWARE is not provided by MS, its parent corporation Microsoft Corporation, or their affiliates or subsidiaries. For product support, please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICE. Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

**No Liability for Certain Damages:** EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THRID PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND/OR THEIR AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S. TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S. \$250.00).

- THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY EXPRESSLY BE PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

### End User Notice

#### ***Microsoft® Windows® Mobile for Automotive Important Safety Information***

This system Ford SYNC™ contains software that is licensed to Manufacturer FORD MOTOR COMPANY by an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation pursuant to a license agreement. Any removal, reproduction, reverse engineering or other unauthorized use of the software from this system in violation of the license agreement is strictly prohibited and may subject you to legal action.

**Read and follow instructions:** Before using your Windows Automotive- based system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("User's Guide"). Not following precautions found in this User's Guide can lead to an accident or other serious consequences.

**Keep User's Guide in vehicle:** When kept in the vehicle, the User's Guide will be a ready reference for you and other users unfamiliar with the Windows Automotive-based system. Please make certain that before using the system for the first time, all persons have access to the User's Guide and read its instructions and safety information carefully.

## Appendices

---

### WARNING



Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

### General Operation

**Voice Command Control:** Functions within the Windows Automotive-based system may be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel.

**Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.

**Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

### Use of Speech Recognition Functions:

Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors.

**Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

**Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious consequences. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

**Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

**Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.

## Appendices

---

**Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.

**Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

### **TeleNav Software End User License Agreement**

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software.

TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

### **1. Safe and Lawful Use**

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software: (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely; (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions; (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked; (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement; (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

### **2. Account Information**

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

## Appendices

---

### **3. Software License**

Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

### **3.1 License Limitations**

You agree not to do any of the following: (a) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; (b) attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; (c) remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; (d) distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or (e) use the TeleNav Software in any manner that (i) infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party, (ii) violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or (iii) is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

# Appendices

---

## 4. Disclaimers

To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

## 5. Limitation of Liability

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR 09/22/09 - 10 of 19 - Confidential GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.



# Appendices

---

## **6. Arbitration and Governing Law**

You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial.

This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of laws provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

## **7. Assignment**

You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

## **8. Miscellaneous**

### **8.1**

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

### **8.2**

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement

## Appendices

---

### 8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

### 8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

### 8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

### 8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

### 9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

The TeleNav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to TeleNav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the TeleNav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to TeleNav's third party vendor licensors:

#### **NavTeq End User License Agreement**

##### **END USER TERMS**

The content provided ("Data") is licensed, not sold. By opening this package, or installing, copying, or otherwise using the Data, you agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. If you do not agree to the terms of this agreement, you are not permitted to install, copy, use, resell or transfer the Data. If you wish to reject the terms of this agreement, and have not installed, copied, or used the Data, you must contact your retailer or NAVTEQ North America, LLC ("NT") within thirty (30) days of purchase for a refund of your purchase price. To contact NT, please visit [www.navteq.com](http://www.navteq.com).

The Data is provided for your personal, internal use only and may not be resold. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms (this "End User License Agreement") and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAVTEQ North America, LLC ("NT") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®.

# Appendices

---

NT holds a nonexclusive license from the United States Postal Service ® to publish and sell ZIP+4 ® information.

© United States Postal Service ® 2009. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service ®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

The Data for Mexico includes certain Data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

## TERMS AND CONDITIONS

**License Limitations on Use:** You agree that your license to use this Data is limited to and conditioned on use for solely personal, noncommercial purposes, and not for service bureau, timesharing or other similar purposes. Except as otherwise set forth herein, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

**License Limitations on Transfer:** Your limited license does not allow transfer or resale of the Data, except on the condition that you may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if: (a) you retain no copies of the Data; (b) the recipient agrees to the terms of this End User License Agreement; and (c) you transfer the Data in the exact same form as you purchased it by physically transferring the original media (e.g., the CD-ROM or DVD you purchased), all original packaging, all Manuals and other documentation. Specifically, Multi-disc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided to you and not as a subset thereof.

**Additional License Limitations:** Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NT in a separate written agreement, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, your license is conditioned on use of the Data as prescribed in this agreement, and you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with, or in communication with, including without limitation, cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

## WARNING



This Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic Data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

**No Warranty:** This Data is provided to you "as is", and you agree to use it at your own risk. NT and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

## Appendices

---

**Disclaimer of Warranty:** NT AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

**Disclaimer of Liability:** NT AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THIS DATA; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DATA, ANY DEFECT IN THIS DATA, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NT OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

**Export Control:** You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit NT from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

**Entire Agreement:** These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NT (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

**Severability:** You and NT agree that if any portion of this agreement is found illegal or unenforceable, that portion shall be severed and the remainder of the Agreement shall be given full force and effect.

**Governing Law:** The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the personal jurisdiction of the State of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

# Appendices

---

**Government End Users:** If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial term" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with this End User License Agreement, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use", and be treated in accordance with such Notice:

## **NOTICE OF USE**

CONTRACTOR  
(MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER)

NAME:

## **NAVTEQ**

CONTRACTOR  
(MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER)

ADDRESS:

**425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60606.**

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101

and is subject to the End User License Agreement under

which this Data was provided.

© 2011 NAVTEQ. All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify NAVTEQ prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

Wi-Fi hotspot data provided by JiWire, © 2013 JiWire.

## **Gracenote® Copyright**

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright© 2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents #5,987,525, #6,061,680, #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDb are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

## **Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)**

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device.

This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

## Appendices

---

You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at [www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com) for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER.

© Gracenote 2007.

## Appendices

---

FCC ID: KMHSYNCG2

IC: 1422A-SYNCG2

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### **WARNING**



Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

---

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

## General Maintenance Information

### Why Maintain Your Vehicle?

Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may also help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with your vehicle.

Regular maintenance intervals for your vehicle have been established based upon rigorous testing. It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the proper times. These intervals serve two purposes; one is to maintain the reliability of your vehicle and the second is keep your cost of owning the vehicle down.

It is your responsibility to see that all scheduled maintenance is performed and that the materials used meet the specifications identified in this Owner's Manual. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 267).

Failure to perform scheduled maintenance invalidates warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance.

### Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?

#### Factory-Trained Technicians

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your vehicle. Ask your dealership about the training and certification their technicians, have received.

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple complex performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That is why it is important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

### Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® Replacement Parts

Dealerships stock Ford, Motorcraft and Ford-authorized branded remanufactured replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed our specifications. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide 12 month or 12000 mile (20000 kilometer) parts and labor limited warranty.

If you do not use Ford authorized parts they may not meet our specifications and depending on the part it could affect emissions compliance.

### Convenience

Many dealerships have extended evening and Saturday hours to make your service visit more convenient and they offer one stop shopping. They can perform any services that are required on your vehicle, from general maintenance to collision repairs.

**Note:** *Not all dealers have extended hours or body shops. Please contact your dealer for details.*

### Protecting Your Investment

Maintenance is an investment that pays dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To ensure the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, it is imperative that scheduled maintenance be completed at the designated intervals.



# Scheduled Maintenance

---

Your vehicle is equipped with the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor® system which displays a message in the message center at the proper oil change service interval. This interval may be up to one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers).

When ENGINE OIL CHANGE DUE or OIL CHANGE REQUIRED appears in the message center display, it is time for an oil change. The oil change must be done within two weeks or 500 miles (800 kilometers) of the ENGINE OIL CHANGE DUE or OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message appearing. The Intelligent Oil Life Monitor® must be reset after each oil change. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 221).

If your message center is prematurely reset or becomes inoperative, you should perform the oil change interval at six months or 5000 miles (8000 km) from your last oil change. Never exceed one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) between oil change intervals.

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple complex performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That is why it is important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

We recommend maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. We rely upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommend against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

We strongly recommend the using only genuine Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized re-manufactured replacement for parts because they are engineered for your vehicle.

## **Additives and Chemicals**

Recommended additives and chemicals are listed in this Owner's Manual and in the Workshop Manual. Additional chemicals or additives not approved by Ford Motor Company are not recommended as part of normal maintenance. Please consult your Warranty Manual for complete warranty information.

## **Oils, Fluids and Flushing**

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating or foreign material contamination should be inspected immediately by a qualified expert such as the factory-trained technicians at your dealership.

Your vehicle's oils and fluids should be changed at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system or using a Ford-approved flushing chemical.

## **Owner Checks and Services**

Certain basic maintenance checks and inspections should be performed every month or at six months intervals.

### **Check Every Month**

- Engine oil level.
- Function of all interior and exterior lights.
- Tires for wear and proper pressure, including the spare tire.
- Windshield washer fluid level.

## Scheduled Maintenance

### Check Every Six Months

- Battery connections. Clean if necessary.
- Body and door drain holes for obstructions. Clean if necessary.
- Cooling system fluid level and coolant strength.
- Door weatherstrips for wear. Lubricate if necessary.
- Hinges, latches and outside locks for proper operation. Lubricate if necessary.
- Parking brake for proper operation.
- Safety belts and seat latches for wear and function.

- Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag and safety belt) for operation.
- Washer spray and wiper operation. Clean or replace blades as necessary.

### Multi-Point Inspection

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important to have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. We recommend the following multi-point inspection be performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help ensure your vehicle keeps running great.

Multi-Point Inspection	
Accessory drive belt(s)	Hazard warning system operation
Battery performance	Horn operation
Engine air filter	Radiator, cooler, heater and A/C hoses
Exhaust system	Suspension components for leaks or damage
Exterior lamps operation	Steering and linkage
Fluid levels*; fill if necessary	Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure
For oil and fluid leaks	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits
Half-shaft dust boots	Washer spray and wiper operation

\* Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, automatic transmission and window washer

# Scheduled Maintenance

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It is a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. It is your checklist that gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle. You know what has been checked, what is okay as well as those things that may require future or immediate attention. The multi-point vehicle inspection is one more way to keep your vehicle running great.

## Normal Scheduled Maintenance

### Intelligent Oil Life Monitor®

Your vehicle is equipped with an Intelligent Oil Life Monitor that determines when the engine oil should be changed based on how your vehicle is used. By using several important factors in its calculations, the monitor helps reduce the cost of owning your vehicle and reduce environmental waste at the same time.

This means you won't have to remember to change the oil on a mileage-based schedule; the vehicle lets you know when an oil change is due by displaying **ENGINE OIL CHANGE DUE** or **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** in the message center.

The following table is intended to provide examples of vehicle use and its impact on engine oil change intervals. It is provided as a guideline only. Actual engine oil change intervals depends on several factors and generally decreases with severity of use.

When to expect the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message	
Miles (kilometers)	Vehicle use and example
7500-10000 (12000-16000)	Normal
	Normal commuting with highway driving No or moderate load or towing Flat to moderately hilly roads No extended idling
5000-7499 (8000-11999)	Severe
	Moderate to heavy load or towing Mountainous or off-road conditions Extended idling Extended hot or cold operation
3000-4999 (4000-7999)	Extreme
	Maximum load or towing Extreme hot or cold operation

## Scheduled Maintenance

<b>At every oil change interval as indicated by the message center<sup>1</sup></b>	
Change engine oil and filter. <sup>2</sup>	
Rotate the tires.	
Perform a multi-point inspection (recommended).	
Inspect the automatic transmission fluid level. Consult your dealer for requirements.	
Inspect the brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake.	
Inspect the cabin air filter.	
Inspect the engine cooling system strength and hoses.	
Inspect the exhaust system and heat shields.	
Inspect the rear axle and U-joints. Lubricate any areas with grease fittings (4WD vehicles).	
Inspect the half-shaft boots.	
Inspect the steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tire-rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints. Lubricate any areas with grease fittings (4WD vehicles).	
Inspect the tires, tire wear and measure the tread depth.	
Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.	

<sup>1</sup> Do not exceed one year or 10000 miles (16000 km) between service intervals.

<sup>2</sup> Reset the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor® after each engine oil and filter change. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 221).

<b>Additional Maintenance Items<sup>1</sup></b>	
Every 20000 miles (32000 km)	Replace cabin air filter.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Replace engine air filter.
At 100000 miles (160000 km)	Change engine coolant. <sup>2</sup>
Every 100000 miles (160000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

# Scheduled Maintenance

Additional Maintenance Items <sup>1</sup>	
	Inspect accessory drive belt(s). <sup>3</sup>
Every 150000 miles (240000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
	Replace accessory drive belt(s). <sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Additional maintenance items can be performed within 3000 miles (4800 km) of the last engine oil and filter change. Do not exceed the designated distance for the interval.

<sup>2</sup> Initial replacement at six years or 100000 miles (160000 km), then every three years or 50000 miles (80000 km).

<sup>3</sup> Perform a follow-up inspection at 120000 miles (192000 km).

<sup>4</sup> If not replaced within the last 100000 miles (160000 km).

## Maintenance Schedule Log

☐ Repair Order #:

☐ Distance:

☐ Engine hours (optional):

☐ Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

## Scheduled Maintenance

---

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

# Scheduled Maintenance

☐ Repair Order #:

☐ Distance:

☐ Engine hours (optional):

☐ Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

☐ Signature:

☐ Repair Order #:

☐ Distance:

☐ Engine hours (optional):

☐ Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

☐ Signature:

☐ Repair Order #:

☐ Distance:

☐ Engine hours (optional):

☐ Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

☐ Signature:

## Scheduled Maintenance

---

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	



## Scheduled Maintenance

---

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

### Special Operating Conditions

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in any of the following conditions, you need to perform additional maintenance as indicated. If you operate your vehicle **occasionally** under any of these conditions, it is not necessary to perform the additional maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

## Scheduled Maintenance

Perform the services shown in the following tables when specified or within 3000 miles (4800 km) of the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message appearing in the message center.

- **Example 1:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message comes on at 28751 miles (46270 km); perform the 30000 mile (48000 km) automatic transmission fluid replacement.

- **Example 2:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message has **not** come on but the odometer reads 30000 miles (48000 km); perform the engine air filter replacement. (i.e., Intelligent Oil Life Monitor® was reset at 25000 miles [40000 km].)

Towing a Trailer or Using a Car-top Carrier	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by message center and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Inspect and lubricate U-joints.</li> <li>· See axle maintenance items under <b>Exceptions</b>.</li> </ul>
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.

Extensive Idling or Low-speed Driving for Long Distances, as in Heavy Commercial Use (i.e. Delivery, Taxi, Patrol Car or Livery)	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by message center and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Replace cabin air filter (if equipped).</li> <li>· Replace engine air filter.</li> </ul>
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
Every 60000 miles (96000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

Operating in Dusty or Sandy Conditions Such as Unpaved or Dusty Roads	
Inspect frequently, service as required	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Replace cabin air filter (if equipped).</li> <li>· Replace engine air filter.</li> </ul>
Every 5000 miles (8000 km)	Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.

## Scheduled Maintenance

Operating in Dusty or Sandy Conditions Such as Unpaved or Dusty Roads	
	· Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.
Every 5000 miles (8000 km) or six months	· Change engine oil and filter. · Perform multi-point inspection.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.

Reset your Intelligent Oil Life Monitor® after each engine oil and filter change. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 221).

Exclusive Use of E85 (Flex Fuel Vehicles only)	
Every oil change	If ran exclusively on E85, fill the fuel tank full with regular unleaded fuel.

### Special Operating Condition Log

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	Dealer stamp
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

## Scheduled Maintenance

---

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

## Scheduled Maintenance

---

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

### Exceptions

There are several exceptions to the Normal Schedule:

## Scheduled Maintenance

---

**Normal vehicle axle maintenance:** Rear axles and power take-off (PTO) units with synthetic fluid and light-duty trucks equipped with Ford-design axles are lubricated for life; do not check or change fluid unless a leak is suspected, service is required or the assembly has been submerged in water. During long periods of trailer towing with outside temperatures above 70°F (21°C) and at wide-open throttle for long periods above 45 mph (72 km/h), non-synthetic rear axle fluids should be changed every 3000 miles (4800 km) or three months, whichever comes first. This interval can be waived if the axle is filled with 75W140 synthetic gear fluid meeting Ford specification WSL-M2C192-A, part number FITZ-19580-B, or equivalent. Add friction modifier XL-3 (EST-M2C118-A) or equivalent for complete refill of Traction-Lok rear axles. See **Technical Specifications** (page 271).

**Police/Taxi/Livery vehicle axle maintenance:** Change rear axle fluid every 100000 miles (160000 km). Rear axle fluid change may be waived if the axle was filled with 75W140 synthetic gear fluid meeting Ford specification WSL-M2C192-A, part number FITZ-19580-B, or equivalent. Add four ounces (118 mL) of additive friction modifier XL-3 (EST-M2C118-A) or equivalent for complete refill of Traction-Lok rear axles. The axle fluid should be changed anytime the axle has been submerged in water.

**California fuel filter replacement:** If the vehicle is registered in California, the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item will not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability prior to the completion of the vehicle's useful life. Ford Motor Company, however, urges you to have all recommended maintenance services performed at the specified intervals and to record all vehicle service.

**Hot climate oil change intervals:** Vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates using an American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines (Certification mark) oil of SM or SN quality, the normal oil change interval is 5000 miles (8000 km). If the available API "SM" or "SN" oils are not available, then the oil change service interval is 3000 mile (4800 km).

**Engine air filter and cabin air filter replacement:** Engine air filter and cabin air filter life is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions will require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter and cabin air filter.

### Engine Coolant Change Record

**Initial change:** Six years or 100000 miles (160000 km) (whichever comes first).

**After initial change:** Every three years or 50000 miles (80000 km).

## Scheduled Maintenance

---

### Engine Coolant Change Log

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

## Scheduled Maintenance

---

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	

<input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:	<div>Dealer stamp</div>
<input type="radio"/> Distance:	
<input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):	
<input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Signature:	



# Index

## 4

4WD	
See: Four-Wheel Drive.....	151

## A

A/C	
See: Climate Control.....	113
About This Manual.....	7
Protecting the Environment.....	7
ABS	
See: Brakes.....	156
ABS driving hints	
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	156
Accessories.....	274
Exterior style.....	274
Interior style.....	274
Lifestyle.....	274
Peace of mind.....	274
Accessories	
See: Replacement Parts	
Recommendation.....	11
Active Park Assist.....	163
Automatic Steering into Parking	
Space.....	164
Deactivating the Park Assist Feature.....	165
Troubleshooting the System.....	166
Using Active Park Assist.....	163
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	229
Horizontal Aim Adjustment.....	231
Vertical Aim Adjustment.....	229
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	64
Airbag Disposal.....	43
Air Conditioning	
See: Climate Control.....	113
Alarm	
See: Anti-Theft Alarm.....	63
Ambient Lighting.....	73
Anti-Theft Alarm.....	63
Arming the Alarm.....	63
Disarming the Alarm.....	63
Appendices.....	380
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	83
Headlamps On Warning Chime.....	83
Key in Ignition Warning Chime.....	83
Parking Brake On Warning Chime.....	83

Audio Control.....	64
Type 1.....	64
Type 2.....	65
Type 3.....	65
Audio System.....	97
General Information.....	97
Audio unit - Vehicles With:	
AM/FM/CD/Satellite	
Radio/SYNC.....	102
Audio unit - Vehicles With:	
AM/FM/CD/SYNC.....	100
Audio unit - Vehicles With:	
AM/FM/CD.....	98
Audio unit - Vehicles With: Premium	
AM/FM/CD.....	105
Audio unit - Vehicles With: Sony	
AM/FM/CD.....	106
Menu Structure.....	107
Autolamps.....	70
Automatic Climate Control.....	114
Mono Mode.....	115
Switching Mono Mode Back On.....	115
Switching Mono Mode Off.....	115
Temperature Control.....	115
Automatic Transmission.....	147
Brake-Shift Interlock.....	148
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or	
Snow.....	149
SelectShift Automatic®	
Transmission.....	148
Understanding the Positions of Your	
Automatic Transmission.....	147
Automatic Transmission Fluid	
Check.....	225
Autowipers.....	67
Auxiliary Input Jack.....	109
Auxiliary Power Points.....	132
110 Volt AC Power Point.....	132
Locations.....	132

## B

Blind Spot Monitor.....	171
Blind Spot Information System (BLIS®)	
with Cross Traffic Alert.....	171
Booster Seats.....	17
Types of Booster Seats.....	18
Brake Fluid Check.....	225

# Index

Brakes.....	156
General Information.....	156
Breaking-In.....	194
Bulb Specification Chart.....	235

## C

Cabin Air Filter.....	119
California Proposition 65.....	10
Capacities and Specifications.....	267
Technical Specifications.....	271
Car Wash	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	236
Center Console.....	134
Changing a Bulb.....	231
Lamp Assembly Condensation.....	231
Replacing Fog, Park and Turn Signal Bulbs.....	233
Replacing Headlamp Bulbs.....	232
Replacing HID Headlamp Bulbs.....	232
Replacing High-Mount Brake Lamp Bulb.....	234
Replacing License Plate Lamp Bulb.....	234
Replacing Reverse Lamp Assembly.....	234
Replacing Side Marker Bulbs.....	233
Replacing Tail, Brake and Turn Signal Bulbs.....	234
Changing a Fuse.....	207
Fuses.....	207
Changing a Road Wheel.....	260
Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information.....	260
Tire Change Procedure.....	262
Changing the Engine Air Filter.....	228
1.6L and 2.0L EcoBoost® Engines.....	228
2.5L Engine.....	229
Changing the Vehicle Battery.....	226
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	227
Checking MyKey System Status.....	50
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	227
Child Restraint and Safety Belt Maintenance.....	33
Child Safety.....	14
General Information.....	14
Child Safety Locks.....	24
Child Seat Positioning.....	16
Child Seats.....	16

Cleaning Leather Seats.....	239
Cleaning Products.....	236
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.....	240
Cleaning the Engine.....	237
Cleaning the Exterior.....	236
Cleaning Plastic Exterior Parts.....	237
Exterior Chrome.....	236
Underbody.....	237
Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens.....	239
Cleaning the Interior.....	238
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades.....	238
Clearing All MyKeys.....	50
Climate.....	367
Climate Control Voice Commands.....	369
Climate Control.....	113
Coolant Check	
See: Engine Coolant Check.....	222
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....	42
Creating a MyKey.....	49
Programming/Changing Optional Settings.....	50
Cruise Control.....	66
Principle of Operation.....	170
Cruise Control	
See: Using Cruise Control.....	170
Customer Assistance.....	201

## D

Data Recording.....	9
Event Data Recording.....	9
Service Data Recording.....	9
Daytime Running Lamps.....	71
Direction Indicators.....	72
Driver and Passenger Airbags.....	36
Children and Airbags.....	37
Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment.....	36
Driving Aids.....	171
Driving Hints.....	194
Driving Through Water.....	194
DRL	
See: Daytime Running Lamps.....	71

# Index

## E

Eco Mode.....	175
Resetting Eco Mode.....	175
Type 1.....	175
Type 2 and 3.....	175
Economical Driving.....	194
Emission Control System.....	143
On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II).....	144
Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) Testing.....	145
End User License Agreement.....	380
SYNC® End User License Agreement (EULA).....	380
Engine Block Heater.....	138
Using the Engine Block Heater.....	139
Engine Coolant Check.....	222
Adding Engine Coolant.....	222
Checking the Engine Coolant.....	222
Recycled Engine Coolant.....	223
Severe Climates.....	224
What you Should Know About Fail-Safe Cooling.....	224
Engine Immobilizer	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	62
Engine Oil Check.....	221
Adding Engine Oil.....	221
Resetting the Oil Life Monitoring System.....	222
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L EcoBoost®.....	221
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.5L/2.0L EcoBoost®.....	221
Engine Specifications.....	267
Drivebelt Routing.....	267
Entertainment.....	332
A/V Inputs.....	351
AM/FM Radio.....	333
Bluetooth Audio.....	350
Browsing Device Content.....	332
CD.....	344
SD Card Slot and USB Port.....	346
SIRIUS® Satellite Radio (If Activated).....	339
Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information.....	349

Essential Towing Checks.....	190
Before Towing a Trailer.....	190
Hitches.....	190
Safety Chains.....	190
Trailer Brakes.....	190
Trailer Lamps.....	190
When Towing a Trailer.....	191
Event Data Recording	
See: Data Recording.....	9
Export Unique Options.....	13
Exterior Mirrors.....	75
Blind Spot Monitor.....	76
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors.....	75
Heated Exterior Mirrors.....	75
Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors.....	76
Memory Mirrors.....	75
Power Exterior Mirrors.....	75

## F

Fastening the Safety Belts.....	27
How to Extract Safety Belts in the Rear Outboard Positions.....	29
Restraint of Pregnant Women.....	27
Safety Belt Extension Assembly.....	29
Safety Belt Locking Modes.....	28
Floor Mats.....	195
Fog Lamps - Front	
See: Front Fog Lamps.....	72
Ford Credit.....	11
(U.S. Only).....	11
Ford Extended Service Plan (ESP).....	276
SERVICE PLANS (CANADA ONLY).....	277
SERVICE PLANS (U.S. only).....	276
Four-Wheel Drive.....	151
Front Fog Lamps.....	72
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	37
Fuel and Refueling.....	140
Fuel Consumption.....	145
Calculating Fuel Economy.....	146
Filling the Tank.....	146
Fuel Cut-Off Switch.....	198
Fuel Filter.....	225
Fuel Quality.....	141
Choosing the Right Fuel.....	141
Octane Recommendations.....	141
Fuses.....	207

# Index

Fuse Specification Chart.....	208
Luggage Compartment Fuse Panel.....	214
Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel.....	211
Power Distribution Box.....	208
Pre-Fuse Box.....	208

## G

Gauges.....	79
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	80
Fuel Gauge.....	80
Information Display.....	79
Gearbox	
See: Transmission.....	147
General Information on Radio	
Frequencies.....	44
Intelligent Access.....	44
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada.....	204
Getting the Services You Need.....	201
Away From Home.....	201

## H

Hazard Warning Flashers.....	198
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	71
Head Restraints.....	121
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	122
Heated Seats.....	127
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	119
Heated Exterior Mirror.....	119
Heated Rear Window.....	119
Heating	
See: Climate Control.....	113
Hill Start Assist.....	149
Using Hill Start Assist.....	149

Hints on Controlling the Interior	
Climate.....	115
Cooling the Interior Quickly.....	117
General Hints.....	115
Heating the Interior Quickly.....	116
Maximum Cooling Performance in Instrument Panel or Instrument Panel and Footwell Positions.....	119
Recommended Settings for Cooling.....	117
Recommended Settings for Heating.....	117
Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather.....	118
Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods During Extreme High Ambient Temperatures.....	118
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	156
Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	217

## I

Ignition Switch.....	135
In California (U.S. Only).....	202
Information Display Control.....	66
Information Displays.....	84
General Information.....	84
Information.....	358
911 Assist®.....	365
Calendar.....	364
Notifications.....	364
SIRIUS Travel Link.....	362
SYNC Services (If Equipped, U.S. Only).....	358
Vehicle Health Report.....	366

# Index

Information Messages.....	87
Airbag.....	87
Alarm.....	88
Battery and Charging System.....	88
Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System.....	88
Doors.....	89
Engine.....	90
Hill Start Assist.....	90
Keyless Vehicle.....	90
Lighting.....	91
Maintenance.....	92
Message indicator.....	87
MyKey.....	92
Park Aid.....	93
Park Brake.....	93
Power Steering.....	94
Starting System.....	94
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	96
Traction Control.....	96
Transmission and Four-Wheel Drive.....	94
Installing Child Seats.....	19
Using LAP AND SHOULDER BELTS.....	19
Using Lower Anchors AND Tethers FOR Children (LATCH).....	22
Using Tether Straps.....	23
Instrument Cluster.....	79
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	71
Vehicles With Front Fog Lamps.....	71
Vehicles Without Front Fog Lamps.....	71
Interior Lamps.....	72
Front Interior Lamp.....	72
Rear Interior Lamp.....	73
Interior Mirror.....	76
Auto-Dimming Mirror.....	76
Introduction.....	7
<b>J</b>	
Jump-Starting the Vehicle.....	198
Connecting the Jumper Cables.....	199
Jump Starting.....	199
Preparing Your Vehicle.....	198
Removing the Jumper Cables.....	199

## K

Keyless Entry.....	60
SECURICODE™ KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD.....	60
Keyless Starting.....	135
Fast Restart.....	137
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....	137
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	136
Keys and Remote Controls.....	44
Principle of Operation.....	44
Knee Airbag.....	37

## L

Lighting Control.....	70
Headlamp Flasher.....	70
High Beams.....	70
Lighting.....	70
Load Carriers See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	178
Load Carrying.....	177
Load Limit.....	179
Vehicle loading - with and without a trailer.....	179
Locking and Unlocking.....	54
Activating Intelligent Access .....	55
Autolock and Autounlock .....	56
Battery Saver.....	56
Illuminated Entry.....	56
Illuminated Exit.....	56
Power Door Locks.....	54
Remote Control.....	54
Smart Unlocks For Integrated Keyhead Transmitter.....	55
Smart Unlocks For Intelligent Access Keys .....	55
Locks.....	54
Luggage Covers.....	177

## M

Maintenance.....	217
General Information.....	217
Manual Climate Control.....	113
Manual Liftgate.....	57

# Index

Manual Seats.....	123
Adjusting the Height of the Driver's Seat.....	123
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	123
Recline Adjustment.....	124
Media Hub.....	110
Memory Function.....	125
Recalling a Stored Seat Position.....	126
Saving a Passive Setting.....	126
Saving a Pre-Set Position.....	126
Menu.....	326
Active Park Assist.....	327
Changing Your Door Keypad Code.....	327
Display Settings.....	326
Rear View Camera.....	327
Settings.....	327
Setting the Clock.....	326
Sound.....	327
Valet Mode.....	327
Message Center	
See: Information Displays.....	84
Mirrors	
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	119
See: Windows and Mirrors.....	74
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	12
Moonroof.....	77
Bounce-Back.....	78
Opening and Closing the Moonroof.....	77
Opening and Closing the Sunscreen.....	77
Venting the Moonroof.....	78
Motorcraft Parts.....	267
MyFord Touch®.....	315
General Information.....	315
MyKey®.....	49
Principle of Operation.....	49
MyKey Troubleshooting.....	51

## N

Navigation.....	371
cityseekr.....	373
Map Mode.....	374
Navigation Map Updates.....	377
Navigation Voice Commands.....	377
Point of Interest (POI) Categories.....	372
Quick-touch Buttons.....	376
Setting a Destination.....	371
Setting Your Navigation Preferences.....	373

## O

Oil Check	
See: Engine Oil Check.....	221
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	217
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature.....	205
Obtaining a French Owner's Manual.....	205
Overhead Console.....	134

## P

Parking Aid.....	161
Front Sensing System.....	162
Rear Sensing System.....	161
Parking Aids.....	161
Parking brake	
See: Parking Brake.....	157
Parking Brake.....	157
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	62
SecuriLock®.....	62
PATS	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	62
Perchlorate.....	10
Personal Safety System™.....	34
How Does the Personal Safety System Work?.....	34
Phone.....	352
Making Calls.....	353
Pairing Subsequent Phones.....	353
Pairing Your Phone for the First Time.....	352
Phone Menu Options.....	353
Phone Settings.....	356
Receiving Calls.....	353
Text Messaging.....	354

# Index

Power Door Locks	
See: Locking and Unlocking.....	54
Power Liftgate.....	57
Obstacle Detection.....	59
Opening and Closing the Liftgate.....	58
Setting the Liftgate Open Height.....	59
Power Seats.....	124
Power Lumbar.....	125
Power Steering Fluid Check.....	225
Power Windows.....	74
Accessory Delay.....	75
Bounce-Back.....	74
One-Touch Down.....	74
One-Touch Up.....	74
Window Lock.....	74

## R

Rear Seat Armrest.....	127
Rear Seats.....	126
Folding the Seatback.....	126
Recline Adjustment.....	126
Unfolding the Seatback.....	126
Rear Under Floor Storage.....	177
Adjustable Load Floor.....	177
Cargo Management System.....	177
Passenger Compartment Floor.....	177
Rear View Camera.....	167
Using the Rear View Camera System.....	167
Rear View Camera	
See: Rear View Camera.....	167
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	69
Rear Window Washer.....	69
Rear Window Wiper.....	69
Recommended Towing Weights.....	188
Refueling.....	142
Easy Fuel® No Cap Fuel System.....	143
Remote Control.....	44
Car Finder.....	46
Integrated Keyhead Transmitters .....	44
Intelligent Access Key.....	45
Remote Start .....	47
Replacing the Battery.....	45
Sounding a Panic Alarm.....	47
Remote Start.....	119
Automatic Settings.....	120
Heated and Cooled Devices.....	120
Last Settings.....	120

Removing a Headlamp.....	231
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	237
Replacement Parts	
Recommendation.....	11
Collision Repairs.....	11
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs.....	11
Warranty on Replacement Parts.....	11
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	48
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only).....	206
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only).....	205
Roadside Assistance.....	197
Vehicles Sold In Canada : Getting Roadside Assistance.....	197
Vehicles Sold In Canada : Using Roadside Assistance.....	197
Vehicles Sold In The U.S.: Getting Roadside Assistance.....	197
Vehicles Sold In The U.S. : Using Roadside Assistance.....	197
Roadside Emergencies.....	197
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	178
Adjusting the Crossbar.....	178
Running Out of Fuel.....	141
Refilling With a Portable Fuel Container.....	141

## S

Safety Belt Height Adjustment.....	30
Safety Belt Minder.....	31
Belt-Minder®.....	31
Safety Belts.....	26
Principle of Operation.....	26
Safety Belt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime.....	30
Conditions of operation.....	30
Safety Canopy®.....	41
Safety Precautions.....	140
Satellite Radio.....	110
Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN).....	111
Satellite Radio Reception Factors.....	111
SIRIUS® Satellite Radio Service.....	111
Troubleshooting.....	112

# Index

Scheduled Maintenance.....	396
Engine Coolant Change Record.....	410
Exceptions.....	409
General Maintenance Information.....	396
Normal Scheduled Maintenance.....	399
Special Operating Conditions.....	405
Seats.....	121
Security.....	62
Side Airbags.....	40
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	121
Snow Chains	
See: Using Snow Chains.....	256
Special Notices.....	11
New Vehicle Limited Warranty.....	11
Notice to Owners of Pickup Trucks and Utility Type Vehicles.....	12
Special Instructions.....	11
Using Your Vehicle as an Ambulance.....	12
Using Your Vehicle With a Snowplow.....	12
Speed Control	
See: Cruise Control.....	170
Stability Control.....	159
Principle of Operation.....	159
Starter Switch	
See: Ignition Switch.....	135
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	137
Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....	138
Important Ventilating Information.....	138
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	135
General Information.....	135
Steering.....	176
Electric Power Steering.....	176
Steering Wheel.....	64
Storage Compartments.....	134
Sun Visors.....	77
Illuminated Vanity Mirror.....	77
Supplementary Restraints System.....	35
Principle of Operation.....	35
Symbols Glossary.....	7
SYNC® Applications and Services.....	295
911 Assist.....	295
SYNC Services: Traffic, Directions & Information (TDI).....	298
Vehicle Health Report.....	297
SYNC®.....	279
General Information.....	279
SYNC® Troubleshooting.....	308

## T

Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	267
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only).....	203
Tire Care.....	245
Glossary of Tire Terminology.....	246
Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading.....	245
Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall.....	246
Temperature A B C.....	245
Traction AA A B C.....	245
Treadwear.....	245
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	257
Changing Tires with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	258
Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System .....	258
Tire Pressures	
See: Technical Specifications.....	265
Tires	
See: Wheels and Tires.....	243
Towing a Trailer.....	188
Towing Points.....	191
Installing the Towing Eye.....	191
Towing Eye Location.....	191
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....	191
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....	192
Emergency Towing.....	192
Recreational Towing.....	193
Towing.....	188
Traction Control.....	158
Principle of Operation.....	158
Trailer Sway Control.....	188
Transmission Code Designation.....	270
Transmission.....	147
Transporting the Vehicle.....	192
Trip Computer.....	86
All Value.....	87
Average Fuel.....	87
Fuel Used.....	87
Resetting the Trip Computer.....	86
Trip Odometer.....	86
Trip Timer.....	86



# Index

## U

Under Hood Overview - 1.6L	
EcoBoost®.....	218
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L	
EcoBoost®.....	219
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L.....	220
Universal Garage Door Opener.....	128
Homelink® Wireless Control System.....	128
USB Port.....	110
Using Cruise Control.....	170
Switching Off Cruise Control.....	170
Switching On Cruise Control.....	170
Using Four-Wheel Drive.....	151
Driving in Special Conditions With	
Four-Wheel Drive.....	152
Using MyKey With Remote Start	
Systems.....	50
Vehicles Equipped with Intelligent Access	
Key (Push Button Start).....	51
Vehicles Equipped with Traditional	
Keys.....	51
Using Snow Chains.....	256
Using Stability Control.....	160
AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control™	
(RSC®).....	160
Using SYNC® With Your Media	
Player.....	301
Accessing Your Play Menu.....	305
Connecting Your Digital Media Player to the	
USB Port.....	301
Media Menu Features.....	303
Media Voice Commands.....	301
System Settings.....	306
What's Playing?.....	301
Using SYNC® With Your Phone.....	283
Accessing Features through the Phone	
Menu.....	288
Accessing Your Phone Settings.....	291
Making Calls.....	286
Pairing a Phone for the First Time.....	283
Pairing Subsequent Phones.....	284
Phone Options during an Active Call.....	286
Phone Voice Commands.....	284
Receiving Calls.....	286
System Settings.....	292
Text Messaging.....	289

Using Traction Control.....	158
System Indicator Lights and	
Messages.....	158
Using Voice Recognition.....	281
Helpful Hints.....	281
Initiating a Voice Session.....	281
System Interaction and Feedback.....	282
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration	
Program (Canada Only).....	203

## V

Vehicle Care.....	236
General Information.....	236
Vehicle Certification Label.....	270
Vehicle Identification Number.....	269
Vehicle Storage.....	240
Battery.....	241
Body.....	241
Brakes.....	241
Cooling system.....	241
Engine.....	241
Fuel system.....	241
General.....	240
Miscellaneous.....	241
Removing Vehicle From Storage.....	242
Tires.....	241
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control.....	113
VIN	
See: Vehicle Identification Number.....	269
Voice Control.....	66
MyFord Touch® Controls.....	66

# Index

---

## W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	80
Airbag - Front.....	80
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	80
Battery.....	81
Blind Spot Monitor.....	81
Brake System.....	81
Cruise Control.....	81
Direction Indicator.....	81
Engine Oil.....	81
Fasten Safety Belt.....	81
Fog Lamps - Front.....	81
High Beam.....	81
Information.....	82
Low Fuel Level.....	82
Low Tire Pressure Warning.....	82
Parking Lamps.....	82
Service Engine Soon.....	82
Stability Control.....	83
Stability Control Off.....	83
Washer Fluid Check.....	225
Washers	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	236
See: Wipers and Washers.....	67
Waxing.....	237
Wheels and Tires.....	243
General Information.....	243
Technical Specifications.....	265
Windows and Mirrors.....	74
Windshield Washers.....	68
Windshield Wipers.....	67
Intermittent Wipe.....	67
Speed Dependent Wipers.....	67
Wipers and Washers.....	67

